

2 Business Transaction Protocol

3 An OASIS Committee Specification

4 ***CURRENT STATUS : committee draft for review***

5 Version 1.0 [0.9.6.1]

6 DD Mmm 2002 [14 May 2002 14:29]

<i>Working Draft 0.9</i>	<i>24 October 2001</i>
<i>Working Draft 0.9.1 – includes all issues agreed 16 Jan 2002, and 82 (deferred)</i>	<i>18 January 2002</i>
<i>Working Draft 0.9.2 – all issues as agreed 13 February 2002</i>	<i>13 February 2002</i>
<i>Working Draft 0.9.2.1 – issues 2, 3, 15, 19, 50, 67, 95</i>	<i>26 February 2002</i>
<i>Working Draft 0.9.2.2 – as accepted 27 Feb 2002+ corrections, issues 29, 60, 97, 99</i>	<i>12 March 2002</i>
<i>Working Draft 0.9.2.3 – 0.9.2.2 and issue 106, 96, 98</i>	<i>18 March 2002</i>
<i>Working Draft 0.9.2.4 – as accepted 27 Mar 2002 + 61, 87, 100, 107, 108, 109, inclusion of model</i>	<i>3 April 2002</i>
<i>Review Draft 0.9.5 – review draft – all changes merged</i>	<i>3 April 2002</i>
<i>Review Draft 0.9.5.1 –revised soln for 87, 2nd solution for 108, additional diagrams for 66, formatting cleanup, inferior-handle, garbles.</i>	<i>22 April 2002</i>
<i>Review Draft 0.9.6 – Review draft 2 (editorial corrections marked)</i>	<i>1 May 2002</i>
<i>Review Draft 0.9.6.1 – and a few more editorials, state table E1, E2, R2 corrections</i>	<i>14 May 2002</i>

7

8 [Change marks relative to 0.9.5.1](#)

9

9 **Copyright and related notices**

10 Copyright © The Organization for the Advancement of Structured Information Standards
11 (OASIS), 2002. All Rights Reserved.

12 This document and translations of it may be copied and furnished to others, and derivative works
13 that comment on or otherwise explain it or assist in its implementation may be prepared, copied,
14 published and distributed, in whole or in part, without restriction of any kind, provided that the
15 above copyright notice and this paragraph are included on all such copies and derivative works.
16 However, this document itself may not be modified in any way, such as by removing the
17 copyright notice or references to OASIS, except as needed for the purpose of developing OASIS
18 specifications, in which case the procedures for copyrights defined in the OASIS Intellectual
19 Property Rights document must be followed, or as required to translate it into languages other
20 than English.

21 The limited permissions granted above are perpetual and will not be revoked by OASIS or its
22 successors or assigns.

23 This document and the information contained herein is provided on an "AS IS" basis and OASIS
24 **DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT**
25 **LIMITED TO ANY WARRANTY THAT THE USE OF THE INFORMATION HEREIN WILL**
26 **NOT INFRINGE ANY RIGHTS OR ANY IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF**
27 **MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE.**

28

29 OASIS takes no position regarding the validity or scope of any intellectual property or other
30 rights that might be claimed to pertain to the implementation or use of the technology described
31 in this document or the extent to which any license under such rights might or might not be
32 available; neither does it represent that it has made any effort to identify any such rights.
33 Information on OASIS's procedures with respect to rights in OASIS specifications can be found
34 at the OASIS website. Copies of claims of rights made available for publication and any
35 assurances of licenses to be made available, or the result of an attempt made to obtain a general
36 license or permission for the use of such proprietary rights by implementors or users of this
37 specification, can be obtained from the OASIS Executive Director.

38 OASIS invites any interested party to bring to its attention any copyrights, patents or patent
39 applications, or other proprietary rights which may cover technology that may be required to
40 implement this specification. Please address the information to the OASIS Executive Director.

41

41 **Acknowledgements**

42 The members of the OASIS Business Transactions Technical Committee contributed to the
43 development of this specification. The following were members of the committee for at least part
44 of the time from July 2001 until the agreement of the specification are listed below. Some TC
45 members changed their affiliation to OASIS members, but remained members of the TC; [multiple](#)
46 [affiliations are shown separated by semi-colons](#):

Mike Abbott	CodeMetamorphosis
Alex Berson	Entrust, Inc
Geoff Brown	Oracle
Doug Bunting	Sun Microsystems
Fred Carter	Sun Microsystems; individual
Alex Ceponkus	Bowstreet Inc.; individual
Pyounguk Cho	Iona
Victor Corrales	Hewlett-Packard Co.
Bill Cox	BEA Systems, Inc.
Sanjay Dalal	BEA Systems, Inc.
Alan Davies	SeeBeyond Inc.
Hatem El-Sebaaly	IPNet
Ed Felt	BEA Systems, Inc.
Tony Fletcher	Choreology Ltd
Bill Flood	Sybase
Peter Furniss	Choreology Ltd
Alastair Green	Choreology Ltd
Mark Hale	Interwoven Inc.
Gordon Hamilton	AppliedTheory; individual
Roddy Herries	Choreology Ltd
Mark Little	Hewlett-Packard Co.
Anne Manes	Systinet
Savas Parastatidis	Hewlett-Packard Co.
Bill Pope	Bowstreet Inc ; individual
Mark Potts	Individual; Talking Blocks
Pal Takacsi-Nagy	BEA Systems, Inc.
James Tauber	Bowstreet; individual mValent
Sazi Temel	BEA Systems, Inc.
Steve Viens	individual
Jim Webber	Hewlett-Packard Co.
Steve White	SeeBeyond Inc.

47

48 The primary authors and editors of the main body of the specification were, in alphabetical order

- 49 Alex Ceponkus (alex@ceponkus.org)
50 Sanjay Dalal (sanjay.dalal@bea.com)
51 Tony Fletcher (tony.fletcher@choreology.com)
52 Peter Furniss (peter.furniss@choreology.com)
53 Alastair Green (alastair.green@choreology.com)
54 Bill Pope (zpope@pobox.com)

55

56 We thank Pal Takacsi-Nagy of BEA Systems Inc and Bill Pope for their efforts in chairing the
57 Technical Committee, and Karl Best of OASIS for his guidance on the organization of the
58 Committee's work.

59

In memory of Ed Felt

60

Ed Felt of BEA Systems Inc. was an active and highly valued contributor to the work of the
61 OASIS Business Transactions Technical Committee.

61

62

His many years of design and implementation experience with the Tuxedo system, Weblogic's
63 Java transactions, and Weblogic Integration's Conversation Management Protocol were brought
64 to bear in his comments on and proposals for this specification.

63

64

65

He was killed in the crash of the hijacked United Airlines flight 93 near to Pittsburgh,

66

on 11 September 2001.

67

67 **Typographical and Linguistic Conventions and Style**

68 The initial letters of words in terms which are defined (at least in their substantive or infinitive
69 form) in the Glossary are capitalized whenever the term used with that exact meaning, thus:

70 Cancel
71 Participant
72 Application Message

73 The first occurrence of a word defined in the Glossary is given in bold, thus:

74 **Coordinator**

75 Such words may be given in bold in other contexts (for example, in section headings or captions)
76 to emphasize their status as formally defined terms.

77 The names of abstract BTP protocol messages are given in upper-case throughout:

78 BEGIN
79 CONTEXT
80 RESIGN

81 The values of elements within a BTP protocol message are indicated thus:

82 BEGIN/atom

83 BTP protocol messages that are related semantically are joined by an ampersand:

84 BEGIN/atom & CONTEXT

85 BTP protocol messages that are transmitted together in a compound are joined by a + sign:

86 ENROL + VOTE

87 XML schemata and instances are given in Courier and are shaded:

88 `<btpe:begin> ... </btpe:begin>`

89 Terms such as **MUST**, **MAY** and so on, which are defined in RFC [TBD number], “[TBD title]”
90 are used with the meanings given in that document but are given in lowercase bold, rather than in
91 upper-case:

92 An Inferior **must** send one of **RESIGN**, **PREPARED** or **CANCELLED** to its
93 Superior.

94

94	Contents	
95	Copyright and related notices.....	2
96	Acknowledgements	3
97	Typographical and Linguistic Conventions and Style	5
98	Contents	6
99	Part 1. Purpose and Features of BTP	10
100	Introduction.....	10
101	Development and Maintenance of the Specification.....	11
102	Structure of this specification.....	12
103	Conceptual Model	13
104	Example Core.....	13
105	Business transactions.....	14
106	External Effects	15
107	Two-phase outcome	16
108	Actors and roles.....	17
109	Superior:Inferior relationship.....	17
110	Business transaction trees.....	18
111	Atoms and Cohesions.....	20
112	Participants, Sub-Coordinator and Sub-Composers.....	21
113	Business transaction creation	21
114	Business transaction propagation	23
115	Creation of Intermediates (Sub-Coordinator and Sub-Composers).....	24
116	“Checking” and context-reply	25
117	Message sequence	25
118	Control of inferiors.....	30
119	Evolution of confirm-set.....	33
120	Confirm-set of intermediates.....	37
121	Optimisations and variations	40
122	Spontaneous prepared.....	40
123	One-shot	41
124	Resignation.....	42
125	One-phase confirmation	43
126	Autonomous cancel, autonomous confirm and contradictions.....	43
127	Recovery and failure handling.....	44
128	Types of failure	44
129	Persistent information.....	45
130	Recovery messages.....	46
131	Redirection	47
132	Terminator:Decider failures and transaction timelimit	48
133	Contradictions and hazard	48
134	Relation of BTP to application and carrier protocols	50
135	Other elements	52
136	Identifiers.....	52
137	Addresses.....	53
138	Qualifiers.....	54
139	Part 2. Normative Specification of BTP	55
140	Actors, Roles and Relationships.....	55
141	Relationships.....	55

142	Roles	57
143	Roles involved in the outcome relationships	58
144	Superior	58
145	Inferior.....	59
146	Enroller.....	59
147	Participant.....	60
148	Sub-coordinator.....	60
149	Sub-composer.....	61
150	Roles involved in the control relationships.....	61
151	Decider	61
152	Coordinator.....	62
153	Composer.....	62
154	Terminator.....	63
155	Initiator	63
156	Factory.....	64
157	Other roles	64
158	Redirector	64
159	Status Requestor	65
160	Summary of relationships	66
161	Abstract Messages and Associated Contracts	67
162	Addresses.....	67
163	Request/response pairs.....	68
164	Compounding messages	69
165	Extensibility.....	71
166	Messages.....	71
167	Qualifiers.....	71
168	Messages not restricted to outcome or control relationships.....	72
169	CONTEXT	72
170	CONTEXT_REPLY.....	73
171	REQUEST_STATUS.....	74
172	STATUS.....	75
173	FAULT.....	77
174	REQUEST_INFERIOR_STATUSES, INFERIOR_STATUSES.....	79
175	Messages used in the outcome relationships	79
176	ENROL.....	79
177	ENROLLED.....	80
178	RESIGN.....	81
179	RESIGNED	82
180	PREPARE	83
181	PREPARED.....	83
182	CONFIRM.....	85
183	CONFIRMED	85
184	CANCEL.....	86
185	CANCELLED	87
186	CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE.....	88
187	HAZARD	89
188	CONTRADICTION	91
189	SUPERIOR_STATE	91
190	INFERIOR_STATE.....	93

191	REDIRECT	95
192	Messages used in control relationships.....	96
193	BEGIN.....	96
194	BEGUN	97
195	PREPARE_INFERIORS.....	98
196	CONFIRM_TRANSACTION.....	99
197	TRANSACTION_CONFIRMED	101
198	CANCEL_TRANSACTION	102
199	CANCEL_INFERIORS	103
200	TRANSACTION_CANCELLED	104
201	REQUEST_INFERIOR_STATUSES.....	105
202	INFERIOR_STATUSES.....	106
203	Groups – combinations of related messages.....	108
204	CONTEXT & application message	108
205	CONTEXT_REPLY & ENROL	109
206	CONTEXT_REPLY (& ENROL) & PREPARED / & CANCELLED	110
207	CONTEXT_REPLY & ENROL & application message (& PREPARED).....	110
208	BEGUN & CONTEXT	111
209	BEGIN & CONTEXT	111
210	Standard qualifiers	111
211	Transaction timelimit	111
212	Inferior timeout.....	112
213	Minimum inferior timeout.....	113
214	Inferior name	113
215	State Tables	114
216	Status queries.....	115
217	Decision events.....	115
218	Disruptions – failure events.....	116
219	Invalid cells and assumptions of the communication mechanism.....	116
220	Meaning of state table events	116
221	Persistent information.....	120
222	Superior state table	124
223	Inferior state table.....	128
224	Persistent information	133
225	XML representation of Message Set.....	133
226	Addresses.....	134
227	Qualifiers	134
228	Identifiers.....	135
229	Message References	135
230	Messages.....	135
231	CONTEXT	135
232	CONTEXT_REPLY.....	135
233	REQUEST_STATUS	136
234	STATUS.....	136
235	FAULT	136
236	ENROL.....	137
237	ENROLLED.....	138
238	RESIGN.....	138
239	RESIGNED	138

240	PREPARE	139
241	PREPARED.....	139
242	CONFIRM.....	139
243	CONFIRMED	139
244	CANCEL	140
245	CANCELLED	140
246	CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE.....	140
247	HAZARD	141
248	CONTRADICTION	141
249	SUPERIOR_STATE	141
250	INFERIOR_STATE	142
251	REDIRECT	142
252	BEGIN.....	142
253	BEGUN	143
254	PREPARE_INFERIORS	143
255	CONFIRM_TRANSACTION.....	143
256	TRANSACTION_CONFIRMED	144
257	CANCEL_TRANSACTION	144
258	CANCEL_INFERIORS	144
259	TRANSACTION_CANCELLED	145
260	REQUEST_INFERIOR_STATUSES	145
261	INFERIOR_STATUSES.....	145
262	Standard qualifiers	146
263	Transaction timelimit	146
264	Inferior timeout.....	146
265	Minimum inferior timeout.....	146
266	Inferior name	146
267	Compounding of Messages.....	146
268	XML Schemas	147
269	XML schema for BTP messages	147
270	XML schema for standard qualifiers	159
271	Carrier Protocol Bindings	160
272	Carrier Protocol Binding Proforma.....	160
273	Bindings for request/response carrier protocols	162
274	Request/response exploitation rules	162
275	SOAP Binding	164
276	Example scenario using SOAP binding	166
277	SOAP + Attachments Binding.....	167
278	Conformance	169
279	Part 3. Glossary	172
280		
281		

281 Part 1. Purpose and Features of BTP

282 Introduction

283 This document, which describes and defines the Business Transaction Protocol (BTP), is a
284 Committee Specification of the Organization for the Advancement of Structured Information
285 Standards (OASIS). The standard has been authored by the collective work of representatives of
286 numerous software product companies (listed on page 3), grouped in the Business Transactions
287 Technical Committee (BT TC) of OASIS.

288 The OASIS BTP Technical Committee began its work at an inaugural meeting in San Jose, Calif.
289 on 13 March 2001, and this specification was endorsed as a Committee Specification by a [***
290 unanimous] vote on [*** date].

291 BTP is designed to allow coordination of application work between multiple participants owned
292 or controlled by autonomous organizations. BTP uses a two-phase outcome coordination protocol
293 to ensure the overall application achieves a consistent result. BTP permits the consistent outcome
294 to be defined *a priori* -- all the work is confirmed or none is -- (an atomic business transaction or
295 atom) or for application intervention into the selection of the work to be confirmed (a cohesive
296 business transaction or cohesion).

297 BTP's ability to coordinate between services offered by autonomous organizations makes it
298 ideally suited for use in a Web Services environment. For this reason this specification defines
299 communications protocol bindings which target the emerging Web Services arena, while
300 preserving the capacity to carry BTP messages over other communication protocols. Protocol
301 message structure and content constraints are schematized in XML, and message content is
302 encoded in XML instances.

303 The BTP allows great flexibility in the implementation of business transaction participants. Such
304 participants enable the consistent reversal of the effects of atoms. BTP participants may use
305 recorded before- or after-images, or compensation operations to provide the "roll-forward, roll-
306 back" capacity which enables their subordination to the overall outcome of an atomic business
307 transaction.

308 The BTP is an interoperation protocol which defines the roles which software agents (actors) may
309 occupy, the messages that pass between such actors, and the obligations upon and commitments
310 made by actors-in-roles. It does not define the programming interfaces to be used by application
311 programmers to stimulate message flow or associated state changes.

312 The BTP is based on a permissive and minimal approach, where constraints on implementation
313 choices are avoided. The protocol also tries to avoid unnecessary dependencies on other
314 standards, with the aim of lowering the hurdle to implementation.

315

315 **Development and Maintenance of the Specification**

316 For more information on the genesis and development of BTP, please consult the OASIS BT
317 Technical Committee's website, at

318 <http://www.oasis-open.org/committees/business-transactions/>

319 As of the date of adoption of this specification the OASIS BT Technical Committee is still in
320 existence, with the charter of

- 321 maintaining the specification in the light of implementation experiences
- 322 coordinating publicity for BTP
- 323 liaising with other standards bodies whose work affects or may be affected by
324 BTP
- 325 reviewing the appropriate time, in the light of implementation experience and
326 user support, to put BTP forward for adoption as a full OASIS standard

327 If you have a question about the functionality of BTP, or wish to report an error or to suggest a
328 modification to the specification, please subscribe to:

329 bt-spec@lists.oasis-open.org

330 Any employee of a corporate member of OASIS, or any individual member of OASIS, may
331 subscribe to OASIS mail lists, and is also entitled to apply to join the Technical Committee.

332 The main list of the committee is:

333 business-transaction@lists.oasis-open.org

334

334 **Structure of this specification**

335 This specification document includes, in Part 1, an explanation and description of the conceptual
336 model of BTP, and, in Part 2, a fully normative specification of the protocol.

337 The use and definition of terms in the model can be regarded as authoritative but should not be
338 taken to restrict implementations or uses of BTP. In case of (unintended) disagreement between
339 the parts, Part 2 takes precedence over Part 1.

340 Part 1 contains

- 341 • Executive Summary
- 342 • This document structure description
- 343 • Conceptual Model

344 Part 2 contains the following sections:

- 345 • Actors, roles and relationships: defines the model entities used in the specification,
346 their relationships to each other and indicates the correspondence of these to real
347 implementation constructs; this section also lists which messages are sent and received
348 for each role.
- 349 • Abstract message set: defines a set of abstract messages that are exchanged between
350 software agents performing the various roles to create, progress and complete the
351 relationships between those roles. For each abstract message the parameters are defined
352 and the associated “contract” is stated – the contract defines the meaning of the
353 message in terms of what the receiver can infer of the sender’s state and the intended
354 effect on the receiver. This section does not itself specify a particular encoding or
355 representation of the messages nor a single mechanism for communicating the
356 messages
- 357 • State tables: specifies the state transitions for the Superior and Inferior roles, detailing
358 when particular messages may be sent and when internal decisions may be made that
359 affect the state
- 360 • XML representation: defines an XML representation of the message set. Other
361 representations of the message set, or parts of it are possible – these may or may not be
362 suitable for interoperation between heterogeneous implementations.
- 363 • Carrier protocol bindings: defines a “carrier binding proforma” that details the
364 information required to specify the mapping to a particular carrier protocol such that
365 independent implementations can interoperate. The proforma requires an identification
366 for the binding, the nature of the addressing information used with the binding, how the
367 messages are represented and encoded and how they are carried (e.g. which carrier
368 protocol messages or fields they are in) and may include other requirements.
- 369 • Using the carrier protocol proforma, this section fully specifies bindings to SOAP 1.1,
370 using the XML representation of the abstract message set.

- 371 • Conformance definitions: defines combinations of facilities (expressed as roles) that an
372 implementation can declare it supports

373 Part 3 contains a glossary that provides succinct definitions of terms used in the rest of the
374 document.

375 **Conceptual Model**

376 This section introduces the concepts of BTP. Its use and definition of terms can be regarded as
377 authoritative but should not be taken to restrict implementations or uses of BTP. Part 2 of the
378 specification is fully normative and in case of disagreement takes precedence over statements or
379 examples in this section.

380 BTP is designed to make minimal assumptions about the implementation structure and the
381 properties of the carrier protocols. This allows BTP to be bound to more than one carrier
382 protocol. BTP implementations built in quite different ways should be able to interoperate if they
383 are bound to the same carrier protocol. This flexibility requires that much of the text is abstract
384 and may be difficult to visualise in the absence of a particular implementation pattern or carrier
385 protocol. To aid understanding some possible implementation examples are presented in the
386 following text.

387 **Example Core**

388 An advanced manufacturing company (*Manufacturer A*) orders the parts and services it
389 needs on-line. It has existing relationships with parts suppliers and providers of services
390 such as shipping and insurance. All of the communications between these organizations
391 is via XML messages. The interactions of these business transactions include:

- 392 1. *Manufacturer A*'s production scheduling system sends an Order message to a
393 *Supplier*.
- 394 2. The *Supplier's* order processing system sends back an order confirmation with the
395 details of the order.
- 396 3. *Manufacturer A* orders delivery from a *Shipper* for the ordered parts.
- 397 4. The *Shipper* evaluates the request and based on its truck schedule it sends back a
398 positive or negative reply.
- 399 5. Some shipments need to be insured based on their value, where they are shipped
400 from, and method of transportation. *Manufacturer A* sends an Order message to an
401 *Insurer* when this is necessary.
- 402 6. The *Insurer* responds with a bid or a no-bid response.

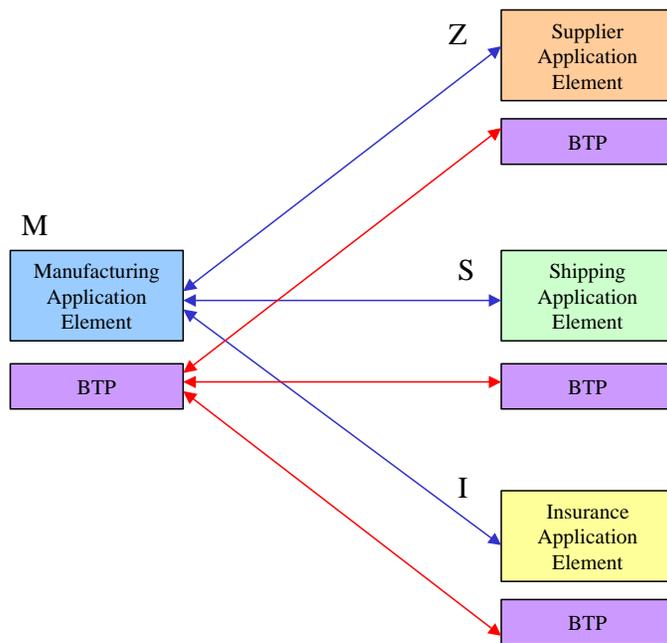
403 Problems have arisen with some of these interactions.

- 404 • *Manufacturer A* had ordered parts from a supplier and contacted shipper M about
405 delivering the goods. Shipper M was busy and agreed to the contract but only for a
406 scheduled delivery the day after the parts were needed. By the time this was
407 addressed it was too late to schedule alternate shipping.

- 408
- 409
- 410
- There were communications problems with supplier Z that resulted in an order not being confirmed. The shipper arrived to pick up the order and supplier Z knew nothing about it.
- 411
- Goods have been shipped without insurance when company policy dictated that insurance was required.
- 412

413 These problems occur because of the unreliable nature of the Internet and the lack of
 414 visibility a company has into the workings and state of an outside organization. By using
 415 BTP in support of this supply application, these problems can be ameliorated.

416 BTP is a protocol, that is, a set of specific messages that get exchanged between computer
 417 systems supporting an application, with rules about the meaning and use of the messages. The
 418 computer systems will also exchange application-specific messages. Thus, within the example,
 419 the Manufacturer's system and the Supplier's system (say), will exchange messages detailing
 420 what the goods are, how many, what price and will also exchange BTP messages. The parts of the
 421 application in both systems that handle these different sets of messages can be distinguished, as in
 422 Figure 1. In each BTP-using party there is an **application element** and a **BTP element**. The
 423 application elements exchange the order information and cause the associated business functions
 424 to be performed. The BTP elements, which send and receive the BTP messages, perform specific
 425 roles in the protocol. These BTP elements assist the application in getting the work of the
 426 application done. The application element, as understood by this model, may include supporting
 427 infrastructure elements, such as containers or interceptors, as well as application-specific code.



428

429 **Figure 1 – Manufacturer Example**

430 **Business transactions**

431 A **Business Transaction** can be defined as a consistent change in the state of a business
 432 relationship between two or more **parties**. A business relationship is any distributed state held by
 433 the parties which is subject to contractual constraints agreed by those parties. For example, an

434 master purchasing agreement, which permits the placing of orders for components by known
435 buying organizations allows a buyer and a seller to create and subsequently exchange meaningful
436 information about the creation and processing of an order. Such agreements (and the consequent
437 specification of shared or canonical data formats and of the messages that carry those formats,
438 and their permitted sequences, all of which are needed for an automated implementation of an
439 agreement) stem from business negotiations and are specific to a particular trading or information
440 exchange community (group of potential parties). This definition of a business relationship is
441 deliberately silent on the nature of the “business” transacted between the parties: it might be
442 trading for profit, verification of authorizations for expenditure or loans, consistent publication
443 (replication) of government ordinances to multiple sites, or any other computerized interaction
444 where the parties require high confidence of consistent delivery or processing of data. In each
445 party or site where business relationship state resides an application system must exist which can
446 maintain that state and communicate it as needed to other parties. The Business Transaction
447 Protocol (BTP) assists the application systems of the various parties to bring about consistent and
448 coordinated changes in the relationship as viewed from each party. BTP assumes that for a given
449 business transaction, state changes occur, or are desired, in computer systems controlled by some
450 set of parties, and that these changes are related in some application-defined manner. BTP
451 assumes that the parties involved in a business transaction have distinct and autonomous
452 application systems, which do not require knowledge of each others’ implementation or internal
453 state representations in volatile or persistent storage. Access to such loosely coupled application
454 systems is assumed to occur only through service interfaces.

455 Thus the state changes that BTP is concerned with are only those affecting the immediate
456 business relationship. Although these externally visible changes will typically correspond to
457 internal state changes of the parties, use of BTP does not itself imply any constraints or
458 requirements on the internal state.¹

459 External Effects

460 BTP coordinates the state changes caused by the exchange of application messages. These state
461 changes are part of the contract between BTP-using parties. In the manufacturing example, an
462 interaction between the manufacturer and the supplier might involve the supplier receiving the
463 order (an application message), checking to ensure that it had enough product on hand, reserving
464 the product in the manufacturer’s name and replying. When the manufacturer agrees to the
465 purchase (assuming the shipping and insurance are also reserved), BTP messages are sent to
466 confirm the purchase. In this case, the supplier is offering a **BTP-enabled service** – the
467 application element and its supporting BTP elements together offer this service.

468 In general, to be able to satisfy such contracts a BTP-enabled **service** must support in some
469 manner provisional or tentative state changes (the transaction’s **provisional effect**) and
470 completion either through confirmation (**final effect**) or cancellation (**counter-effect**). The
471 meaning of provisional, final, and counter-effect are specific to the application and to the
472 implementation of the application. In the example, the reservation of the order is the provisional
473 effect, the completion of the purchase is the final effect.

¹ Although a Business Transaction is defined as concerning a business relationship, the facilities of BTP make it suitable for other environments where loosely coupled systems require coordination and consistency.

474 Some of the implementation approaches are shown in Table 1. From the perspective of BTP and
 475 the initiator application, all these are considered equivalent. Outside of BTP the underlying
 476 business relationship (or contract) between the parties can constrain the degree to which the
 477 effects are visible.

478 **Table 1 Some alternatives for provisional, final and counter effects**

provisional effect	final effect	counter effect	Comment
Store intended changes without performing them	Perform the changes	Delete the stored changes, unperformed	Provisional effect may include checking for validity
Perform the changes, making them visible; store information to undo the changes	Delete undo information	Perform undo action	One form of compensation approach
Store original state, prevent outside access, perform changes	Allow access	Restore original state; allow access	a typical database approach

479 These alternatives are not the only ones – they can be combined or varied. The visible state of the
 480 application information prior to confirmation or cancellation may be different from both the
 481 original state and the final state.

482 Especially in the compensation approach, if the changes are cancelled, the counter-effect may be
 483 a precise inversion or removal of provisional changes, or it may be the processing of operations
 484 that in some way compensate for, make good, alleviate or supplement their effect. There may be
 485 side-effects of various kinds from a counter-effected operation – such as levying of cancellation
 486 charges or the record of the operation may be visible, but marked as cancelled. The possibility of
 487 these side-effects is considered to be part of the overarching contract.

488 **Two-phase outcome**

489 The BTP protocol coordinates the transitions into and out of the event states described above by
 490 sending messages between the transaction parties. This involves a two-phase exchange. First the
 491 application elements exchange messages that determine the characteristics and cause the
 492 performance of the provisional effect; then a separate message, to the BTP element, asking for
 493 the performance of the final or the counter effect.

494 In general, the application elements in the systems involved having first communicated the
 495 application messages, each system that has to make changes in its own state:

- 496 • determines whether it is able achieve its provisional effect and then ensure it will be
 497 able either to cancel (counter-effect) its operation or to confirm (give final effect to) its
 498 operation, whichever is subsequently instructed, and

499 • reports its ability to confirm-or-cancel (its preparedness) to a central coordinating
500 entity.

501 And, after receiving these reports, the coordinating entity:

502 • determines which of the systems should be instructed to confirm and which should be
503 instructed to cancel

504 • informs each system whether it should confirm or cancel (the “outcome”).by sending a
505 message to its BTP element

506 When there is more than one system that has to make changes such a two-phase exchange
507 mediated by a coordinator is required to achieve a consistent outcome for a set of operations.

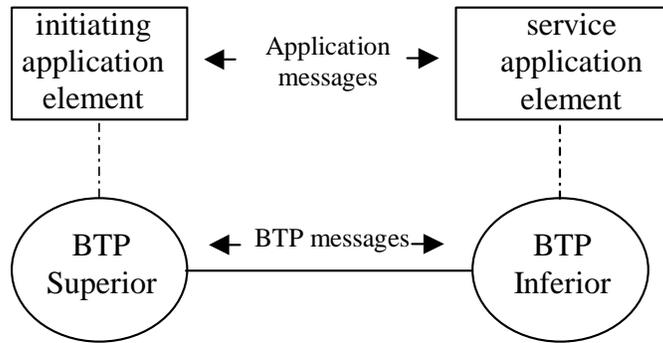
508 The two-phases of the BTP protocol ensure that either the entire attempted transaction is
509 abandoned or a consistent set of participants is confirmed.

510 **Actors and roles**

511 BTP centres on the bilateral relationship between the computer systems of the coordinating entity
512 and those of one of the parties in the overall business transaction. For each bilateral relationship
513 in a business transaction, a software agent within the coordinating entity’s systems plays the BTP
514 role of Superior and a software agent within the systems of the party play the BTP role of
515 Inferior. The concept “**role**” refers strictly to the participation in a particular relationship in a
516 particular business transaction. The software agent performing a role is termed an **Actor**. An
517 Actor is distinguished from other Actors by being distinguishably addressable. The same Actor
518 may perform multiple roles in the same business transaction (including the case where a Superior
519 is also an Inferior), and may also perform the same or different roles in multiple business
520 transactions, either concurrently or consecutively.

521 **Superior:Inferior relationship**

522 A basic case of a single Superior:Inferior relationship, including the association with application
523 elements, is illustrated in Figure 2. In many cases, including the manufacturer supply example,
524 the application element associated with the superior will directly initiate the application
525 exchanges –as does the manufacturer’s application client to the supplier’s server, for example –
526 but this is not invariably the case. It is possible that the first direct communication between the
527 application elements is from one associated with an inferior to the one associated with the
528 superior – for example, with an application that requested quotes by advertising the identity and
529 location of the Superior along with invitation to quote; incoming quotes would be the first direct
530 application message exchanged. In all cases the topmost application element in a tree or subtree
531 will be aware of the business transaction first. How the identity of the transaction and the address
532 of the BTP Superior are communicated to the secondary application element is a matter for the
533 application protocol and not strictly part of BTP, although it will commonly be done by
534 associating a BTP CONTEXT message with application messages..



535

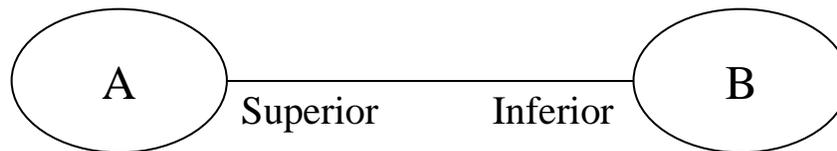
536

Figure 2 Basic Superior:Inferior relationship for BTP

537 An Inferior is associated with some set of application activities that create effects within the
 538 party, for a given business transaction. As stated above, commonly, though not invariably, this
 539 application activity within the party will be a result of some operation invocations from elsewhere
 540 (shown as the “initiating application element” in Figure 2), associated with the Superior to an
 541 application element associated with the Inferior (shown as “Service application element”). This
 542 second application element determines what activities the Inferior is responsible for, and then the
 543 Inferior is responsible for reporting to the Superior whether the associated operations’ provisional
 544 effect can be confirmed/cancelled – this is called “becoming prepared”, because the Inferior has
 545 to remain prepared to receive whichever order eventually arrives (subject to various exceptions
 546 and exclusions, detailed below).

547 **Business transaction trees**

548 There are many patterns in which the service provider participants involved in a business
 549 transaction may be arranged in respect of the two-phase exchange and the determination of which
 550 are eventually confirmed. The simplest is shown in Figure 3 involving only two parties – one (B)
 551 making itself subject to the decision of confirm-or-cancel made by the other (A). This basic
 552 bilateral relationship, in which one side makes itself inferior to the other, is the building block
 553 used in all business transaction patterns. In this simplest case, the “coordination” by the superior,
 554 A, is just that A can be sure whether the operations at the inferior, B were eventually cancelled or
 555 confirmed.

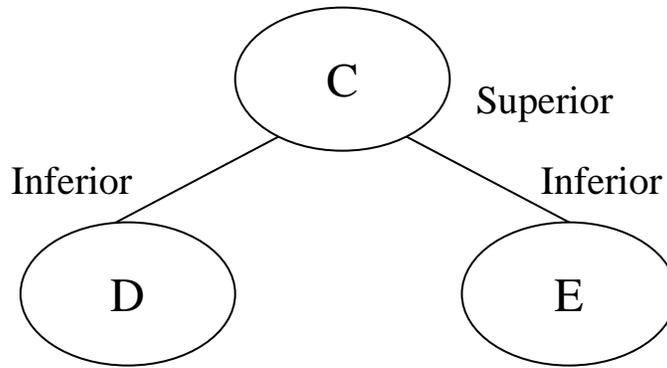


556

557

Figure 3 Simple two-party business transaction

558 In the next simplest case, as in ~~figure~~ Figure 4, a bilateral, Superior:Inferior relationship appears
 559 twice, with two Inferiors, D and E, both making themselves inferior to a single Superior, C. From
 560 the perspective of either D or E, they are in the same position as B in the previous case –they are
 561 unaware of and unaffected (directly) by each other. It is only within C that there is any linkage
 562 between the confirm-or-cancel outcomes that apply to D and E.

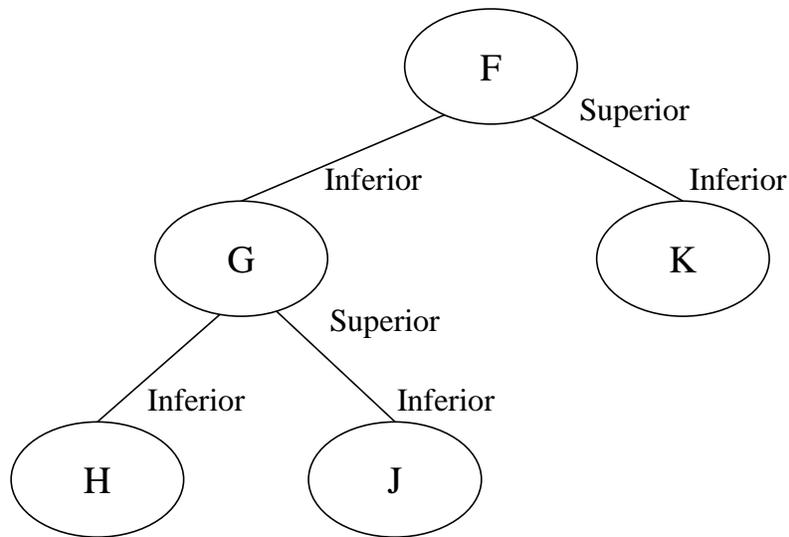


563

564

Figure 4 Business transaction with two inferiors

565 The same Superior:Inferior relationship is used in business transaction trees that are both “wider”
 566 – with more Inferiors reporting their preparedness to be confirm-or-canceled to a single Superior
 567 – and “deeper”. In a “deeper” tree, as in ~~figure~~ Figure 5, an entity (G) that is Superior to one or
 568 more Inferiors (H, J), is itself Inferior to another entity (F) – it is said to be **interposed** or is an
 569 **Intermediate** (either term can be used). In this case, G will collect the information on
 570 preparedness of its Inferiors before passing on its own report to its Superior, F, and awaiting the
 571 outcome as advised by F.



572

573

Figure 5 Business transaction with an Intermediate (interposition)

574 A business transaction tree, made up of these bilateral Superior:Inferior relationships can, in
 575 theory, be arbitrarily “wide” or “deep” – there are no fixed limits to how many Inferiors a single
 576 Superior can have, or how many levels of intermediates there are between the top-most Superior
 577 (that is Inferior to none) and the bottom-most leaf Inferior. The actual creation of the tree depends
 578 on the behaviour and requirements of the application. Given the (potentially) inter-organisational
 579 nature of business transactions, there may be no overall design or control of the structure of the
 580 tree.

581 Each Inferior has only one Superior. However, a single Superior may (and commonly does) have
 582 multiple relationships with Inferiors, and may have such relationships with multiple Inferiors
 583 within each party to the transaction, and with Inferiors within multiple parties.

584 **Atoms and Cohesions**

585 As described in the previous section, the Superior receives reports from its Inferiors as to whether
586 they are prepared. It gathers these reports in order to ascertain which Inferiors should be cancelled
587 and which confirmed - those that cannot prepare will have already cancelled themselves. This
588 determined, directly or indirectly, by the application element responsible of the creation and
589 control of the Superior, which determines the nature of the Superior. There are two dimensions of
590 variation in the Superior: is it an Inferior to another Superior; does it treat its own Inferiors
591 atomically or cohesively. The distinction between atomic and cohesive behaviour is whether the
592 Superior will choose or allow some Inferiors to cancel while others confirm – this is not allowed
593 for atomic behaviour, in which all must confirm or all must cancel, but is for cohesive.

594 The possible cases for a Superior, given these two dimensions of variation, are:

- 595 a) the application element initiated the business transaction (causing the creation of
596 the Superior), and instructed that all Inferiors of the Superior should confirm or
597 all should cancel; the Superior is an **Atom Coordinator**;
- 598 b) the application element initiated the business transaction, but deferred the choice
599 of which Inferiors should confirm until later, allowing it (the application element)
600 to choose some subset to be confirmed, others to cancel; the Superior is a
601 **Cohesion Composer**;
- 602 c) the application element was itself involved in an existing business transaction,
603 and the Superior in this relationship is the Inferior in another one; this application
604 element instructed that all Inferiors of this Superior should confirm, but only if
605 confirmation is instructed from above or all should cancel; the Superior is an
606 (atomic) **Sub-coordinator**;
- 607 d) the application element was itself involved in an existing business transaction,
608 and the Superior in this relationship is the Inferior in another one; this application
609 element deferred the choice of which Inferiors should be candidates to confirm
610 until later, allowing it (the application element) to choose some subset to be
611 confirmed, given that confirmation is instructed from above, others to cancel; the
612 Superior is a (cohesive) **Sub-composer**.

613 In the atomic case, the two-phase outcome exchange means a Superior acting as an atomic
614 Coordinator or sub-coordinator will treat any Inferior which cannot prepare to cancel/confirm as
615 having veto power, causing the Superior to instruct all its Inferiors to cancel. A business
616 transaction whose topmost Superior is atomic is an Atomic Business Transaction, or Atom – the
617 superior is the Atom Coordinator.

618 In the cohesion case, with the Superior acting as a cohesive Composer or Sub-Composer, the
619 controlling application element will determine the implications of an Inferior's failure to be
620 prepared to confirm-or-cancel; the application element may cancel some or all other Inferiors, do
621 other application work, which may involve new Inferiors or may just accept the cancellation of
622 that one Inferior and carry on. A business transaction whose topmost Superior is cohesive is a
623 Cohesive Business Transaction, or Cohesion – the Superior is the Cohesion Composer.

624 For a cohesion, the set of Inferiors that eventually confirm is called the **confirm-set**. The term is
625 also used to mean the set of Inferiors that have been chosen to (potentially) confirm before the
626 final outcome is decided – if the cohesion is eventually cancelled, then confirm-set cancels. (See
627 section “Evolution of confirm-set”). The confirm-set of an Atom is all of the Inferiors.

628 If the Superior is itself an Inferior, its own action of becoming prepared, and reporting this to its
629 own Superior will depend on the receipt of prepared reports from its Inferiors. If it is atomic (i.e.
630 is a sub-coordinator), it will only become prepared if all Inferiors reported preparedness to it; if it
631 is cohesive (i.e. is a sub-composer), the controlling application element will determine whether
632 the set of Inferiors that have reported as prepared is sufficient.

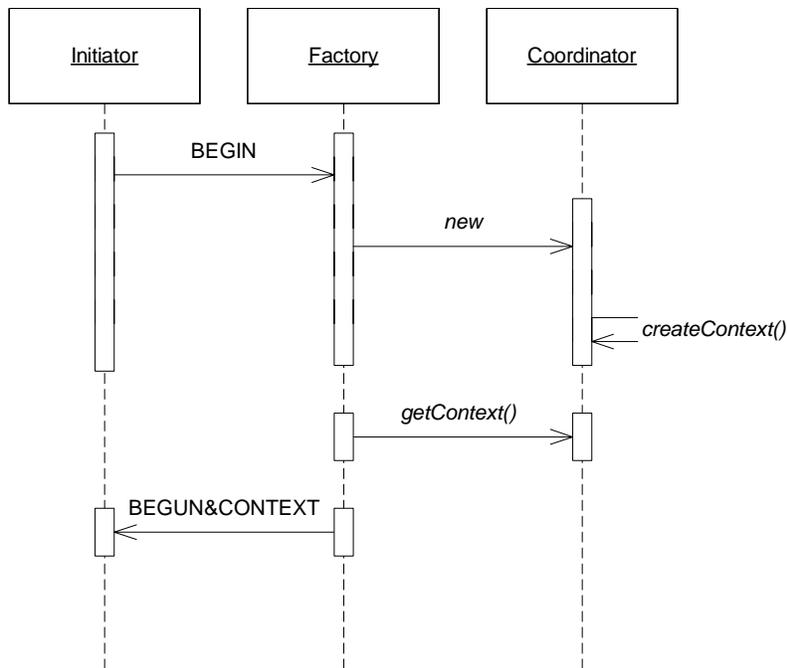
633 If the Superior is not an Inferior, the determination of when, if and, for a Cohesion, what it should
634 confirm depends on the controlling application. This “top-most” Superior has a different
635 relationship to the controlling application to that of an Inferior to its Superior: an Inferior reports
636 that it is prepared to the Superior, which instructs it whether to cancel or to confirm; the top-most
637 Superior is asked by the application element to attempt to confirm, but, dependent on the
638 preparedness of its Inferiors, the top-most Superior makes the final decision. Consequently the
639 top-most Superior is termed the **Decider**; the application element that asks it to confirm is the
640 **Terminator**.

641 **Participants, Sub-Coordinators and Sub-Composers**

642 An Inferior may directly be responsible for applying the confirm-or-cancel decision to some
643 application effects, or may in turn be a BTP Superior to which others will enrol. If it only handles
644 application effects it is called a **Participant**, in the latter case it is called a **Sub-coordinator** or a
645 **Sub-composer**, depending on whether it is atomic or cohesive with respect to its own future
646 Inferiors. (If an Inferior is both responsible for application effects, and is a BTP Superior, it is not
647 considered a Participant, according to the strict definitions, though informally it may be referred
648 to as such.) The Superior is unaware, via the BTP exchanges, whether the Inferior is a Participant,
649 Sub-coordinator or Sub-composer. This specification does not define messages or interfaces for
650 the creation of Participants or for the application element to tell the Participant what the
651 application effects are or how they are to be confirmed or cancelled as necessary. (Although out-
652 of-scope for this specification, one or more APIs could be standardised.)

653 **Business transaction creation**

654 This section describes in some detail how a BTP business transaction is created. The interaction
655 diagram in Figure 6 also shows this sequence. The messages shown in lower-case italics (between
656 Factory and Coordinator) represent interactions that are not specified in BTP.



657

658

Figure 6 – Creation of a business transaction

659 A business transaction is started at the initiative of an application element, which causes the
 660 creation of a Coordinator or Composer. Any Inferiors participating in this transaction will enrol
 661 with this Superior. BTP defines abstract messages (BEGIN, BEGUN) to request this but the
 662 equivalent function can also be achieved using proprietary means, especially if the Factory or
 663 Coordinator is an internal component of the initiating application. If the BTP messages are used,
 664 the application element performs the role of Initiator and sends BEGIN to a Factory. The BEGIN
 665 message identifies whether a Coordinator (for an atom) or a Composer (for a cohesion) is desired.
 666 The Factory, after the creation of the new Coordinator or Composer, replies with related BEGUN
 667 and CONTEXT messages. "Related" means they are sent together in a manner that has semantic
 668 significance; how this is represented is determined by the binding in use. The Coordinator's or
 669 Composer's creation is the establishment of a new instance of a BTP role. It may involve only the
 670 assignment of a new identifier within an existing Actor (which may also be performing the
 671 Factory role, for example). Alternatively a new Actor with a distinct address may be instantiated.
 672 These and other alternatives are implementation choices, and BTP ensures other Actors are
 673 unaffected by the choice made.

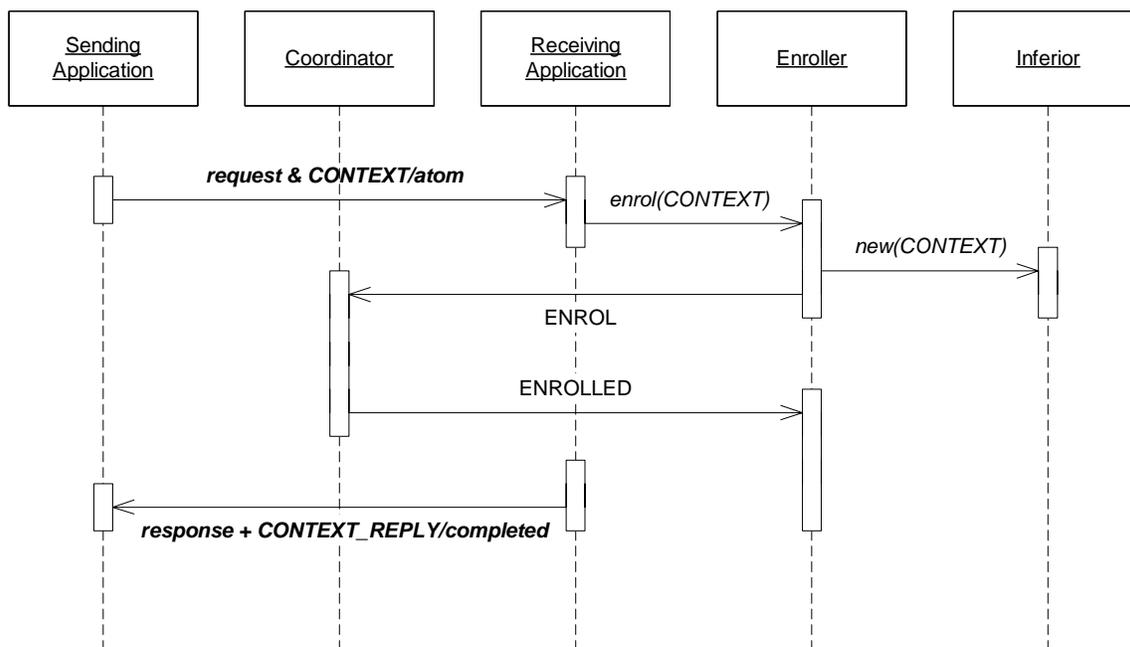
674 The BEGUN message provides the addressing and identification information needed for a
 675 Terminator to access the new Coordinator or Composer as Decider; the application element
 676 performing the Initiator role may itself act as Terminator, or may pass this information to some
 677 other application element.

678 Whether this interoperable BTP Initiator:Factory relationship or some other mechanism is used to
 679 initiate the business transaction, a CONTEXT is made available. This identifies the Coordinator
 680 or Composer as a Superior – containing both addressing information and the identification of the
 681 relevant state information. The CONTEXT is also marked as to whether or not this Superior will
 682 behave atomically with respect to its Inferiors (i.e. is it a Coordinator or Composer).

683 **Business transaction propagation**

684 The propagation of the business transaction from one party to another, to establish the
685 Superior:Inferior relationships involves the transmission of the CONTEXT. This is commonly in
686 association with, or related to, one or more application messages between the parties. In a typical
687 case, an application message is sent from the application element that performed the Initiator role
688 (the “sending application” in Figure 2) to some other element (the receiving application). The
689 CONTEXT is sent with the application message in such a way that the application elements
690 understand that work performed as a result of the application message is to be the subject of a
691 confirm-or-cancel decision of the Superior.² The receiving application element causes the
692 creation of an Inferior (which, as for the Superior may involve just assignment on a new
693 identifier, or instantiation of an new Actor) and ensures the new Inferior is enrolled with the
694 Superior identified in the received CONTEXT, using an ENROL message sent to the Superior
695 using the address in that CONTEXT.

696 Figure 7 shows a sequence diagram of the propagation of a business transaction. It is assumed the
697 transaction has already been created, and thus the application element and Coordinator exist. The
698 diagram shows the Enroller as a distinct role, with non-standardised interactions between the
699 application element, the Enroller and the new Inferior. The Enroller role may in fact be performed
700 by the application element, by the Inferior or by a distinct entity. At least the Superior-identifier
701 and Superior-address from the CONTEXT has to be passed the Enroller and to the Inferior so
702 they can communicate with the Coordinator (whose identifier and address these are).



703

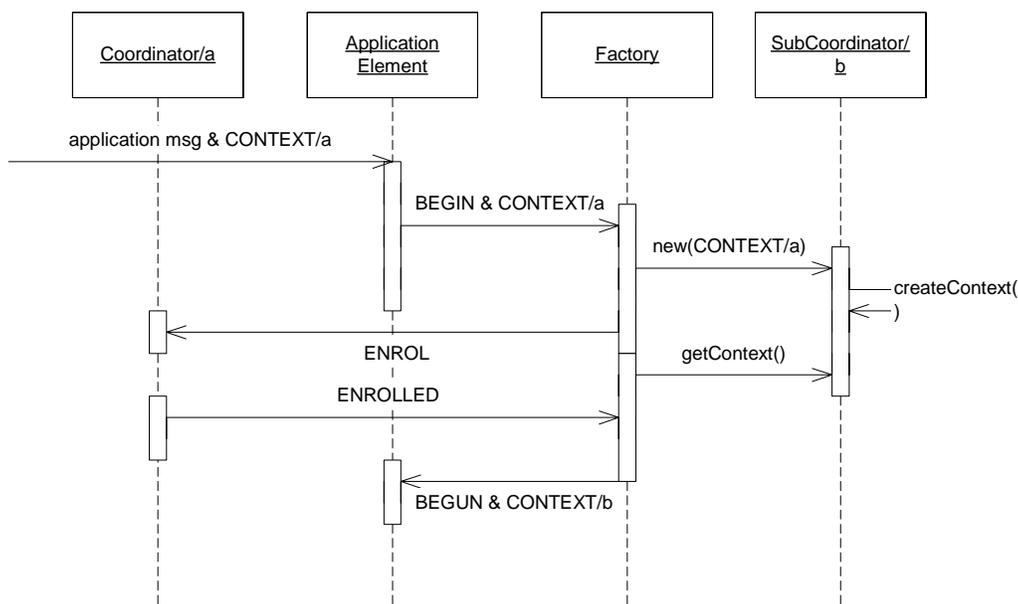
704

Figure 7 Sequence diagram of propagation

² The relationship between the application activity and BTP is subtle, and summarised in this sentence.

705 **Creation of Intermediates (Sub-Coordinators and Sub-Composers)**

706 If the new Inferior is to be a Sub-coordinator or Sub-composer, this can be created using a non-
 707 standard mechanism or the Initiator:Factory relationship can be used again. Figure 8 shows a
 708 sequence diagram, using the latter mechanism. The application element, having received an
 709 application message and a CONTEXT from some Superior – shown as a Coordinator/a in the
 710 diagram - wants to create the new Inferior and acting in the Initiator role, issues BEGIN to the
 711 Factory, but the CONTEXT for the original Superior (Coordinator/a) is “related” to the BEGIN.
 712 The Factory is responsible for enrolling the new Sub-coordinator or Sub-composer as an Inferior
 713 of the Superior identified by the received CONTEXT. The reply from the Factory is a related
 714 BEGUN and CONTEXT – this being the CONTEXT for the new Sub-coordinator (‘b’) or Sub-
 715 composer as a Superior. The Sub-coordinator/Sub-composer is not a Decider, as its decision is
 716 subordinated to the outcome received from the Superior. For a Sub-coordinator, further control by
 717 the application is primarily a matter of relating the new CONTEXT to appropriate application
 718 activity. For a Sub-composer, there is **in-additionalalso** a requirement for the application to
 719 determine which of the Inferiors of the Sub-composer must have reported they are prepared
 720 before the Sub-composer can report that it is itself prepared to its own Superior, and then which
 721 of these Inferiors are to be ordered to confirm if the Sub-composer is ordered to confirm. This
 722 specification does not provide an interface or interoperable message to control this; like the
 723 relationship between application element and Participant, it is left to the implementation or
 724 independent standardisation.



725
726

Figure 8 – Creation of a Sub-coordinator

727 The creation of a new Inferior and establishment of a Superior:Inferior relationship does not
 728 always imply that the BTP Actors are under the control of different business parties or application
 729 elements. In particular, an application element may begin a Cohesion, then create and enrol
 730 (atomic) Sub-coordinators as Inferiors of the Composer, then associate a different Sub-
 731 coordinator’s CONTEXT with each of several aspects of the application work, transmitting that
 732 CONTEXT with the application messages for that aspect to the other parties in the business
 733 transaction. Those parties can then create Participants (or other Inferiors) that are enrolled with

734 the appropriate Sub-coordinator. Later, the application element (as Terminator, or its equivalent)
735 can choose which of the Cohesion Composers' Inferiors to cancel and which to confirm. By
736 interposing its own atomic Sub-coordinator the initiating application element can indicate to the
737 other parties that some associated set of application work will be confirmed or cancelled as a unit.
738 This may allow the receiving parties to share information between application operations and to
739 make one Participant responsible for applying the outcome to several operations.

740 **"Checking" and context-reply**

741 In BTP, enrolment is at the initiative of an application element that has received or has access to
742 the CONTEXT which creates an Inferior (BTP uses a "pull" paradigm for enrolment). An
743 application element in possession of a CONTEXT can choose, perhaps constrained by an
744 overarching business and application understanding, whether and how many Inferiors to create
745 and enrol. Consequently, in general, an application element which propagates a CONTEXT to
746 another (via whatever mechanisms it choose), cannot be sure how many Inferiors will be enrolled
747 as a result. Without further controls, there would be a possibility that an application element
748 receiving a CONTEXT might attempt to enrol an Inferior with a Superior after the Superior had
749 been asked to confirm, or even had completed confirmation. In such a case application work that
750 should have been part of a confirmed atomic business transaction could be cancelled, violating
751 the atomicity in a manner that will not be apparent to the application.

752 To avoid this, whenever a CONTEXT is transmitted to another party by or on behalf of the
753 application, the transmission of the CONTEXT itself can be replied to with a
754 CONTEXT_REPLY message – this is required for an Atom, allowed for a Cohesion. An
755 application element that has received a BTP CONTEXT is able, because it knows the Superior's
756 identification and address in the CONTEXT, to enrol Inferiors (Figure 9).³ Replying with
757 CONTEXT_REPLY means that the sender (the earlier receiver of a CONTEXT) will not enrol
758 any more Inferiors. Consequently the sender of a CONTEXT can keep track of whether there are
759 any outstanding (un-replied to) CONTEXTs that could be used for an enrolment and can avoid
760 requesting or permitting confirmation until everything is safe. This check is required for an Atom,
761 but is not always essential when the CONTEXT is for a Cohesion. For a Cohesion, it is a matter
762 for the controlling application whether all would-be Inferiors must be enrolled before a
763 confirmation decision can be made; or whether it is acceptable to proceed to confirmation at some
764 point in time with the already enrolled Inferiors (or a subset thereof), accepting the automatic
765 cancellation of any late arrivals.

766 CONTEXT_REPLY can also indicate that attempted enrollments failed. This can occur if the
767 Enroller is unable to contact the Superior, but it able to return a CONTEXT_REPLY to where-
768 ever the CONTEXT came from.

769 **Message sequence**

770 BTP messages are used in relationships between several pairs of roles. These particular pair-wise
771 relationships can be categorised into:

³ The "application element" from the perspective of BTP may include infrastructure software such as containers or interceptors, as well the application-specific code itself.

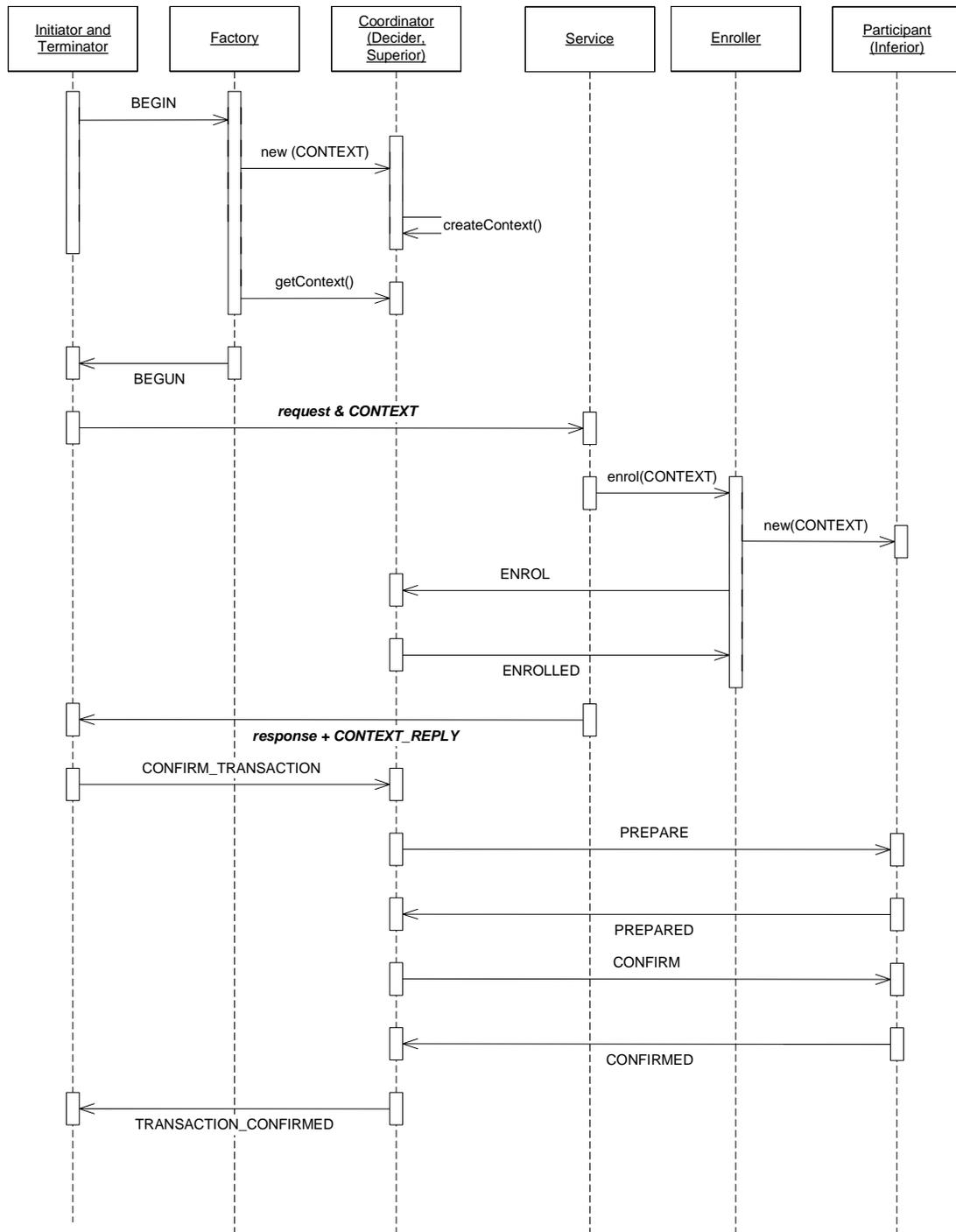
772 • Outcome relationships : the Superior:Inferior relationship (i.e. between BTP actors
773 within the transaction tree) and the Enroller:Superior relationship used in establishing it

774 • Control relationships : the application:BTP actor relationships that create the nodes of
775 the transaction tree (Initiator:Factory) and drive the completion (Terminator:Decider).

776 The outcome relationships and the messages used in them an essential part of BTP. For the
777 control relationships, it would be possible to achieve the same general function using non-
778 standardised messages or API mechanisms. There are other distinguishable relationships between
779 roles defined by BTP that are not standardised in this specification.

780 Figure 9 shows the message exchange for the conventional progression of a simple transaction to
781 confirmation with a single Superior:Inferior relationship, assuming the standard control
782 relationship. Two application elements using a request/response application message exchange
783 are involved – the first is represented as the Initiator and Terminator, the second as the Service
784 and Enroller. The Decider/Superior is shown as a Coordinator, but with only one Inferior there
785 would be no difference with a cohesion Composer. The Factory:Coordinator events are non-
786 standardised, but represent interactions that must occur in some form. There are other interactions
787 between the various application groups – Initiator-Terminator and Participant-Enroller-Service
788 that are not shown – in particular the Service:Participant relationship.

789 The message sequence is shown is the “conventional” sequence, with all messages explicitly
790 present and sent separately. There are several variations and optimisations possible – these are
791 discussed below.



792

793

Figure 9 A conventional message sequence for a simple transaction

794

Note that CONTEXT has a “related” (&) relationship to BEGUN and to the application request

795

(although in the latter case the meaning of this is defined by the application, not by BTP. The

796

response + CONTEXT_REPLY has no semantic significance, and could be sent separately;

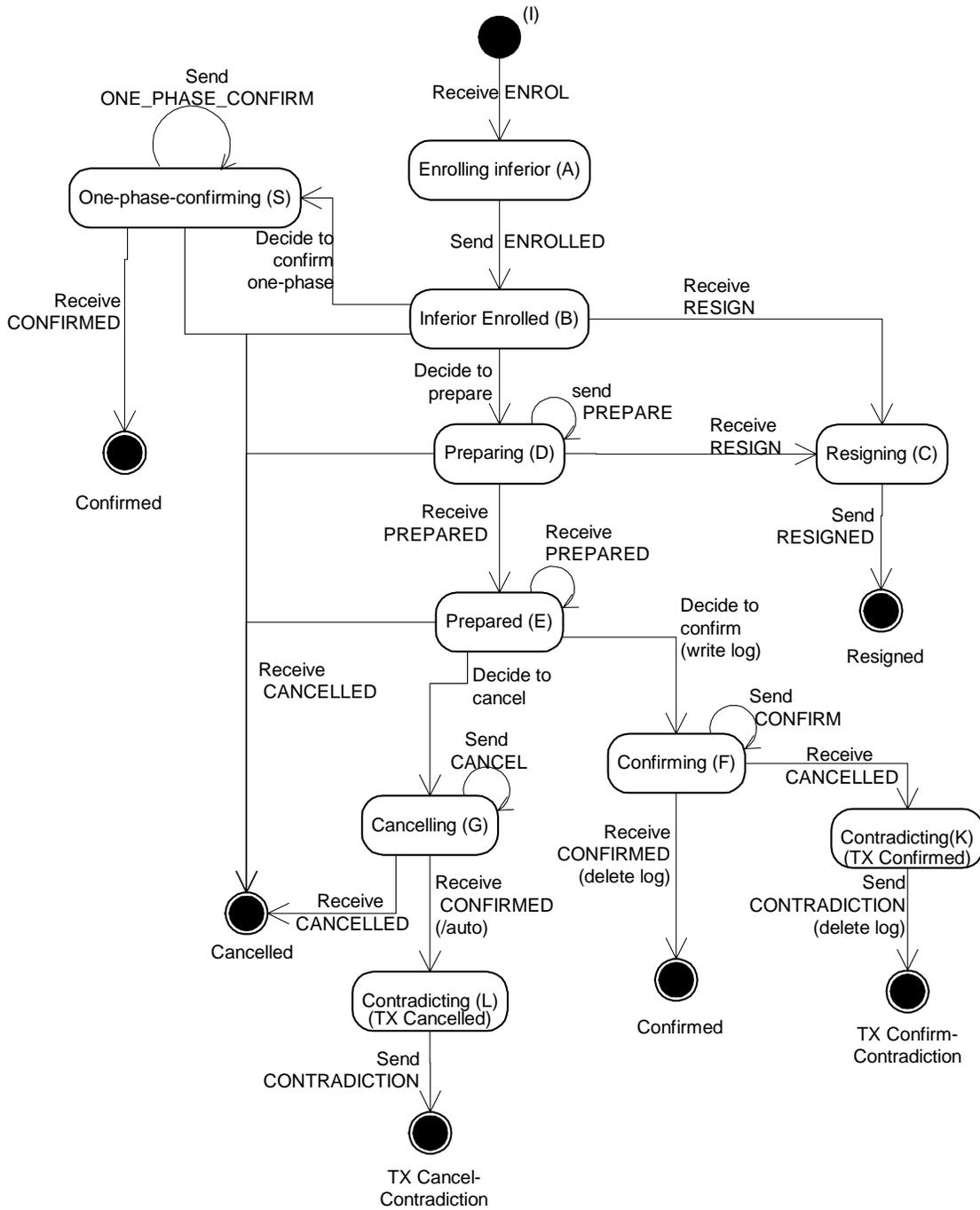
797

provided the CONTEXT_REPLY is not sent until the ENROLLED has returned.

798 The progression of a single instance of the central outcome (Superior:Inferior) relationship can
799 also be presented as a set of state transitions. The normative part of the specification includes
800 state tables for the Superior side of such a relationship and for the Inferior. Since a single
801 Superior (Coordinator, Composer, Sub-coordinator, Sub-composer) can have multiple Inferiors,
802 each Superior will have multiple instances of the “Superior state”. How these link together is
803 discussed below in the section “Evolution of confirm-set”, but the state transitions for the
804 individual Superior:Inferior relationships include “decision events” which constrain the behaviour
805 of the business transaction tree node as a whole, and thus define the semantics of the BTP
806 messages.

807 The normative state tables distinguish some states that differ only in which messages can be
808 received and thus allow for a level of error checking. The progress of the outcome relationship
809 can be followed without dropping to such a detailed level, and the state diagrams shown here
810 aggregate some of the states that are distinguished in the state tables. The single letters in
811 parentheses in the diagrams correspond to the state names used in the tables. For simplicity, the
812 state diagrams do not include the events leading to the sending of a HAZARD message – the
813 detection and recording of a “problem” – meaning that the Inferior is unable to cleanly confirm or
814 cleanly cancel the operations it is responsible for. As is specified in the state tables, such a
815 problem can be detected in most states, and reported with a HAZARD message.

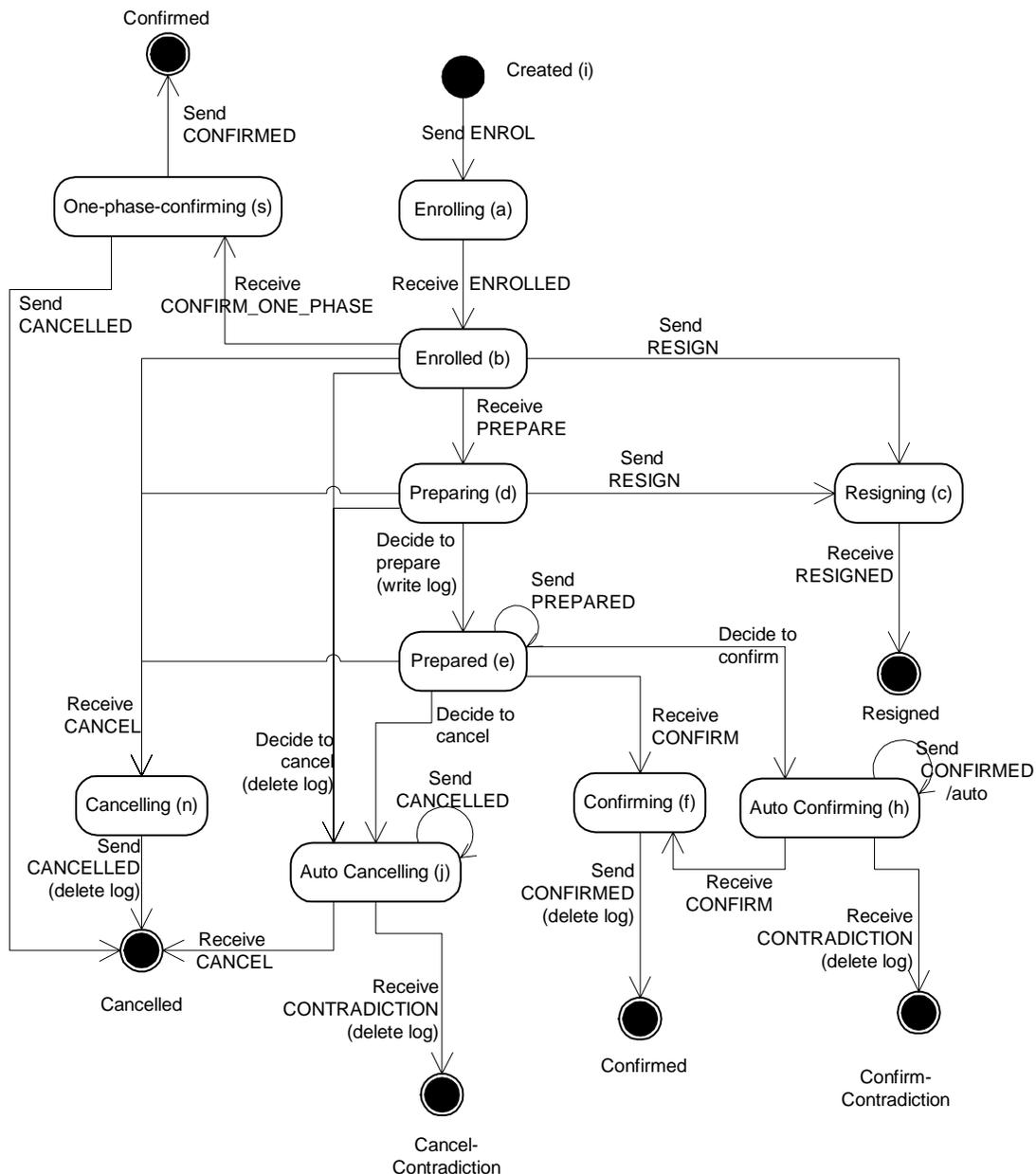
816 It should be noted that, with some exceptions, the transmission of a message **from** a Superior or
817 Inferior does not cause a state change at that side. State changes are normally caused either by the
818 receipt of a message from the peer, or by a “decision event” – which may be an internal change,
819 including a change in the persistent information for the transactions, or may be the receipt of a
820 message on another relationship (e.g. as when a Sub-coordinator receives CANCEL from its
821 Superior, which is a decision event as perceived on the relationships to its Inferiors). It would be
822 normal for an implementation on entering a new state to send the message it can now send (there
823 will be only one). It may repeat this message at any interval – in practice only if there is reason to
824 believe (due to lower-layer errors, timeout or known recovery events) that messages may have got
825 lost.



826

827

Figure 10 State diagram for Superior side of a Superior:Inferior relationship



828

829

Figure 11 State diagram for Inferior side of Superior:Inferior relationship

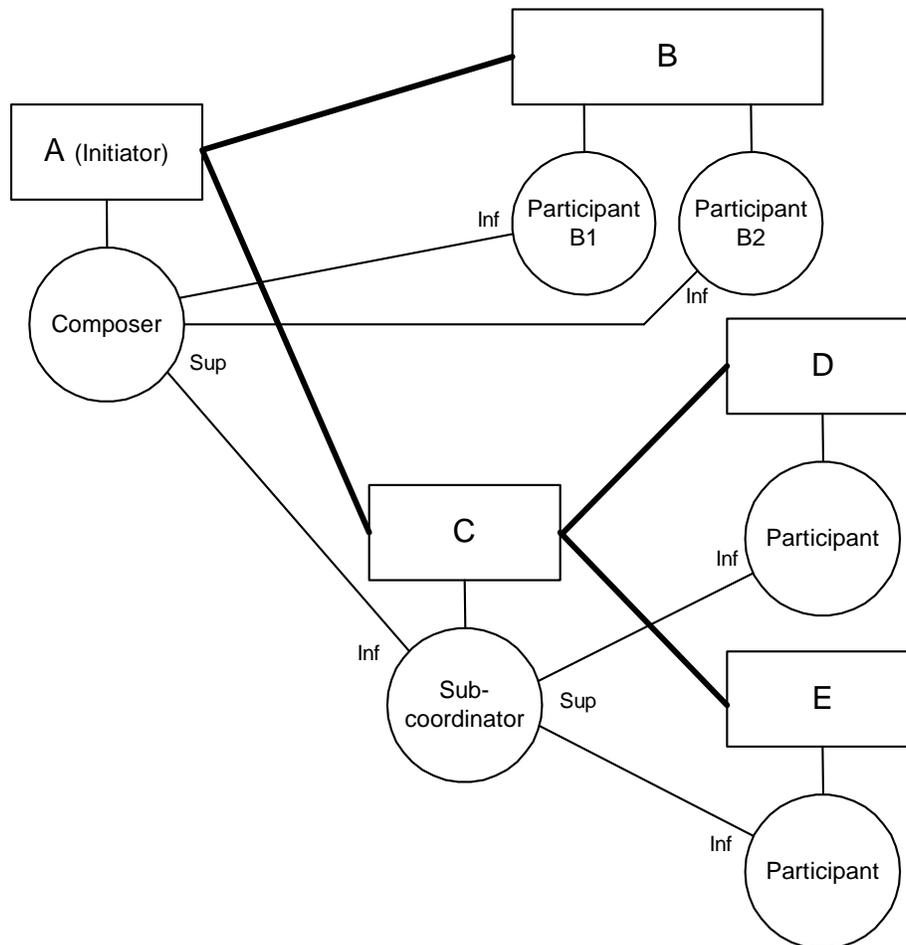
830

Control of inferiors

831

In the case as shown in Figure 12, where the CONTEXT has been propagated from one application element (A) to others (B, C, and from C to D,E), the determination of whether to create and enrol Inferiors is, in general, up to the receiving application element – this is an aspect of the fundamental autonomy of the parties involved in a business transaction. This autonomy may be constrained in particular situations, by inter-party agreement or where the application elements are in fact under common control.

836



837

838

Figure 12 Transaction tree showing various application:Participant relationships

839

The relationship between the application messages and either the propagated CONTEXT or the

840

ENROL message(s) sent to the Superior is strictly part of the application protocol (or the

841

application-with-BTP combination protocol). However defined, this allows the Superior-side

842

application element to be aware of what application work will be confirmed or cancelled under

843

the control of an Inferior. However, from the perspective of the Superior, and the application

844

element controlling it, the Inferior is opaque – it is not in general possible for the Superior or its

845

controlling application element to determine whether an Inferior is a Sub-composer or Sub-

846

coordinator (i.e. has Inferiors of its own) or is a Participant, with no further BTP relationships.

847

Thus, if the Inferior is a Sub-composer or Sub-coordinator, the Superior has no visibility or

848

control of its “grand-children” – the Inferiors of its Inferior (thus, in Figure 12, the Composer at A

849

is unaware of D and E)

850

The opacity of an Inferior does not however apply to the control exercised by the immediately

851

controlling application element. An application element, acting as Terminator to a Decider (i.e. to

852

a Composer or Coordinator), can be aware of and distinguish the different Inferiors enrolled with

853

that Decider (i.e. Inferiors enrolled with the Decider in its role as Superior). (E.g.in Figure 12,

854

application element A knows of the Inferiors at C, B1 and B2) This is especially the case for a

855

Cohesion Composer, where the Terminator will be able to control which of the enrolled Inferiors

856

of the Composer are eventually confirmed – more exactly, the application will have control of the

857 confirm-set for the Cohesion. For an Atom Coordinator, visibility of the Inferiors is useful but
858 less important, since no selection can be made among which will be in the confirm-set – for an
859 Atom, all Inferiors are ipso facto members of the confirm-set.

860 For this control of the Inferiors to be useful, the Terminator application element will need to be
861 able to associate particular parts of the application work with each Inferior. In a traditional
862 transaction system, users do not need to see participants, but they see services or objects. What
863 participants are enlisted with a transaction on behalf of those services and objects is not really of
864 interest to the user. When it comes to commit or rollback the transaction, it acts on the transaction
865 and not on the individual participants.

866 In BTP that is still the case if we work purely with atoms. While an Atomic Coordinator knows
867 its participants it cannot pick and choose among them. In contrast, a Cohesive Terminator must
868 have significant, detailed knowledge and visibility of both the identities of its inferiors and
869 association of parts of the application work with each Inferior. The user must be able to identify
870 which participants to cancel/prepare/confirm. This identification can be achieved by various
871 means. Taking the case of an application element controlling a Cohesion Composer:

872 a) The application element can create an Atom Sub-coordinator as an immediate
873 Inferior of the Cohesion Composer and propagate the Sub-coordinator's CONTEXT
874 associated with application messages concerned with the particular part of the
875 application work; any Inferiors (however many there may be) enrolled with Sub-
876 coordinator can be assumed to be responsible for (some of) that part of the
877 application, and the Terminator application element can just deal with the immediate
878 Inferior of the Composer that it created.

879 b) The application element can propagate the Composer's own CONTEXT, and the
880 receiving application element can create its own Inferior (or Inferiors) which will be
881 responsible for some part of the application, and send ENROL(s) to the Composer (as
882 Superior). Application messages concerned with that part of the application are
883 associated, directly or indirectly, with each ENROL, and the Terminator application
884 element can thus determine what each Inferior is responsible for.

885 In both cases, the means by which the application message and the BTP CONTEXT or ENROL
886 are associated are ultimately application-specific, and there are several ways this can be done.

887 • At the abstract message level, BTP defines the concept of transmitting “related” BTP and
888 application messages – particular bindings to carrier protocols can specify interoperable
889 ways to represent this relatedness (e.g. the BTP message can be in a “header” field of the
890 carrier protocol, the application message in the body).

891 • An application message may contain fields that identify or point to the BTP message (e.g.
892 the “inferior-identifier” from the ENROL may be a field of the application message).

893 • BTP messages, including CONTEXT and ENROL, can carry “qualifiers” – extension
894 fields that are not core parts of BTP or are not defined by BTP at all. The standard
895 qualifier “inferior-name” or application-specific qualifiers can be used to associate
896 application information and the BTP message. The qualifiers received from the Inferiors
897 on ENROL are visible to the Terminator application on the INFERIOR_STATUSES

898 message. The application design will need to ensure that the Terminator can determine
899 which parts of the application work are associated with each Inferior.

900 *NOTE -- For example, a service receiving an invocation associated with a cohesion*
901 *CONTEXT, but where the application design meant that there would be no more*
902 *than one Inferior enrolled as a result of that invocation, could be required to include*
903 *information identifying the service and the invocation in the “inferior-name”*
904 *qualifier on the consequent ENROL. These qualifiers would be visible to the*
905 *Terminator on INFERIOR_STATUSES, allowing the Terminator to determine which*
906 *“inferior-identifiers” to include in the “inferiors-list” parameter of the*
907 *CONFIRM_TRANSACTION which defines which Inferiors are to be confirmed.*
908 *Among other alternatives, the “inferior-identifier” itself could be a field of the*
909 *application response – this would also be applicable where there could be multiple*
910 *Inferiors enrolled as a consequence of one invocation for the Terminator to choose*
911 *between.*

912 These considerations about control of the Inferiors of a Decider also apply to the control of the
913 Inferiors of a Sub-composer (and, again of less importance, a Sub-coordinator).

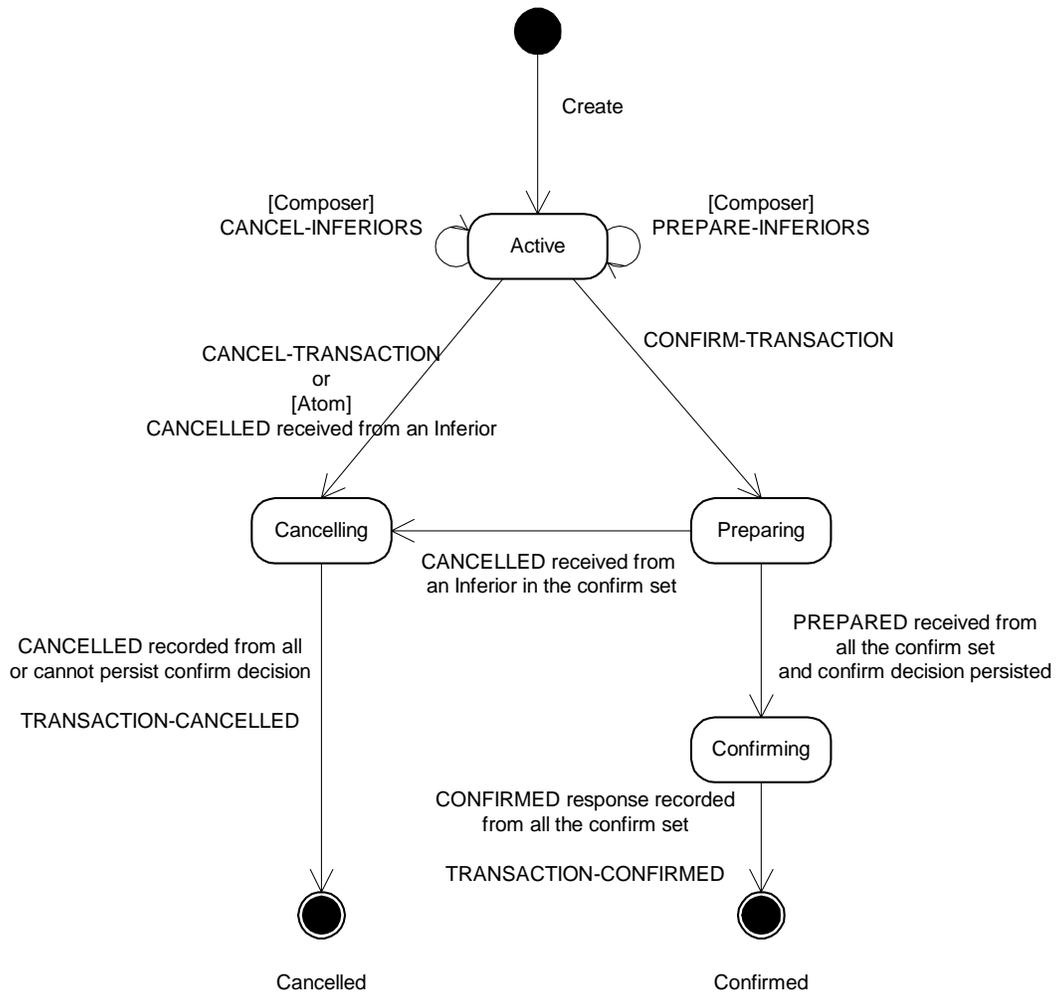
914 **Evolution of confirm-set**

915 As mentioned above, the set of Inferiors of a Cohesion that will eventually confirm is called the
916 Confirm-set. The determination of the Confirm-set is made by the controlling application, but is
917 affected by events from the Inferiors themselves. If the standard control relationship is used, the
918 control of the Cohesion Composer is expressed by the Terminator:Decider exchanges, and the
919 progressive determination of the confirm-set (its evolution) is effectively the event sequence for
920 the Terminator:Decider relationship.

921 An Atom also has a confirm-set, but this always includes all the Inferiors and so does not evolve
922 in the same way as Cohesion’s. With some exceptions, the Terminator:Decider relationship is the
923 same for Atom Coordinators as for Cohesion Composers; this section deals with both, noting the
924 exceptions.

925 The event sequence for a Composer or Coordinator is summarised in the state diagram in Figure
926 13. The step-by-step description refers to “Composer”, but should be read as referring to
927 Coordinators as well, unless stated otherwise.

928 Initially, the Composer is created (by the Factory, using BEGIN with no related CONTEXT), and
929 has no Inferiors. The Composer is now in the active state.



930

931

Figure 13 State diagram for a Composer or Coordinator (i.e. Decider)

932

While in the active state, the following may occur, in any order and with any repetition or overlapping:

933

934

- Inferiors are enrolled – ENROL is received by the Composer – adding to the set of Inferiors of the Composer.

935

936

- Inferiors may resign - RESIGN is received from an Inferior (see section Resignation below). The Inferior is immediately removed from the set of Inferiors, as if it had never been enrolled (a RESIGNED message may be sent to the Inferior, but it no longer “counts” in any of the Composer-wide considerations here).

937

938

939

940

- CANCELLED may be received from an Inferior; there is no required immediate effect, but if this is a Coordinator the Atom will certainly cancel eventually (and an implementation may choose to initiate cancellation immediately).

941

942

943

- PREPARED may be received; there is no immediate effect

944 • The Terminator may issue PREPARE_INFERIORS to the Composer (as Decider)
945 for some subset of the Inferiors; PREPARE is sent to each and any of the Inferiors
946 in the subset, excluding any from RESIGN, CANCELLED or PREPARED has been
947 received; the sending of PREPARE will induce the Inferiors to reply with
948 PREPARED, CANCELLED or RESIGN; when replies have been received from all,
949 the Composer (as Decider) replies to the Terminator with INFERIOR_STATUSES,
950 reporting the replies received (which may in fact have been received before the
951 PREPARE_INFERIORS). PREPARE_INFERIORS is not issued to Atom
952 Coordinators.

953 • The Terminator may issue CANCEL_INFERIORS to the Composer (as Decider) for
954 some subset of the Inferiors; CANCEL is sent to each and any of the Inferiors in the
955 subset, excluding any from RESIGN or CANCELLED has been received; the
956 sending of CANCEL will normally induce the Inferiors to reply with CANCELLED
957 – there are some exception cases; when replies have been received from all, the
958 Composer (as Decider) replies to the Terminator with INFERIOR_STATUSES,
959 reporting the replies received. CANCEL_INFERIORS is not issued to Atom
960 Coordinators. CANCEL_INFERIORS may be issued for an Inferior regardless of
961 whether PREPARED has been received from it.

962 • The Terminator may issue REQUEST_INFERIOR_STATUSES to the Composer
963 (as Decider) for all or some subset of the Inferiors; the Composer immediately
964 replies with INFERIOR_STATUSES, reporting the current state of the Inferiors as
965 known to the Superior.

966 Eventually, the Terminator issues one of the completion messages – CANCEL_TRANSACTION
967 or CONFIRM_TRANSACTION. These messages have a flag that determines whether the
968 Terminator wishes to be informed of contradictory and heuristic decisions or hazards within the
969 transaction – this affects when the reply from the Composer (as Decider) is sent to the
970 Terminator. (See section “Autonomous cancel, autonomous confirm and contradictions” for
971 details on contradictory and heuristic cases).

972 If the message is CANCEL_TRANSACTION, CANCEL is sent to all Inferiors that it has not
973 already been sent to, and from which neither RESIGN or CANCELLED have been received. If
974 the Terminator indicates it does not want to be informed of contradictions, the Composer will
975 immediately reply with TRANSACTION_CANCELLED. Otherwise, if and when CANCELLED
976 or RESIGN has been received from all Inferiors, the Composer replies to the Terminator with
977 TRANSACTION_CANCELLED; but if HAZARD or CONFIRMED is received from any
978 Inferior, the reply is INFERIOR_STATUSES, identifying which Inferior(s) had problems.

979 If the completion message is CONFIRM_TRANSACTION, the inferiors-list parameter of the
980 message defines the confirm-set. If the parameter is absent (which it must be for an atom
981 Coordinator), then all Inferiors (excluding only those that have resigned) are the confirm-set;
982 otherwise the confirm-set is only the Inferiors identified in the inferiors-list parameter (less any
983 from which RESIGN has been received). The processing to arrive at the confirm decision is:

984 • If at the point of receiving CONFIRM_TRANSACTION or at any point before making
985 the confirm decision (see below), CANCELLED is received, then the transaction is
986 cancelled and processing continues as if CANCEL_TRANSACTION had been received.

- 987 • If there any Inferiors **not** in the confirm-set from which neither CANCELLED or
988 RESIGN has been received, CANCEL is sent to them (this cannot happen for Atom
989 Coordinators)
- 990 • If initially or later, there is exactly one Inferior in the confirm-set, and either PREPARE
991 has not been sent to it, or PREPARED has been received from it, then at implementation
992 or configuration option, CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE can be sent to that Inferior. This
993 delegates the confirm decision to the Inferior
- 994 • If at any point, RESIGN is received from an Inferior, it is immediately removed from
995 the confirm-set (this may trigger the decision making)
- 996 • If there are any Inferiors in the confirm-set from which none of PREPARED,
997 CANCELLED has been received and to which PREPARE has not yet been sent,
998 PREPARE is sent to that Inferior
- 999 • If initially or later, PREPARED has been received from all Inferiors in the confirm-set,
1000 the Composer *makes the confirm decision*; it persists (or attempts to persist) information
1001 identifying the Inferiors in the confirm-set; if this fails, the transaction is cancelled and
1002 processing continues as if CANCEL_TRANSACTION had been received; if the
1003 information is persisted, the confirm decision has been made.

1004 When the confirm decision is made, CONFIRM is sent to all the Inferiors in the confirm-set. And,
1005 if on the CONFIRM_TRANSACTION the Terminator indicated it did not wish to be informed of
1006 contradictions, TRANSACTION_CONFIRMED is sent to the Terminator.

1007 If the Terminator indicated it wanted to be informed of contradictions, the Composer replies to it
1008 with TRANSACTION_CONFIRMED if and when CONFIRMED has been received from all the
1009 Inferiors in the confirm-set and CANCELLED or RESIGN has been received from any other
1010 Inferiors. If other replies (CANCELLED from a confirm-set Inferior, CONFIRMED from other
1011 Inferiors, HAZARD from any) are received, the reply to the Terminator is
1012 INFERIOR_STATUSES, identifying which Inferior(s) had problems.

1013 Figure 14 shows an example message sequence for a Composer with three Inferiors. The
1014 Terminator (application element) chooses to prepare Inferiors 1 and 3 explicitly – the numbers in
1015 parentheses on the Terminator:Composer messages represent the inferior-identifiers in the
1016 “inferior-list” parameters. Both 1 and 3 prepare successfully, but the Terminator then decides to
1017 make 1 and 2 the confirm-set; that is, if the transaction confirms only 1 and 2 are confirmed. The
1018 Terminator issues CONFIRM_TRANSACTION to the Composer. A PREPARED message has
1019 not been received from Inferior 2 yet, so the Composer issues PREPARE to it, and waits for the
1020 PREPARED. At the same time, it sends CANCEL to Inferior 3, which has been excluded from
1021 the confirm-set by the CONFIRM_TRANSACTION. After the PREPARED is received from
1022 Inferior 2, the Composer makes the confirm decision and issues CONFIRM to the Inferiors, and
1023 waits for the CONFIRMED messages before reporting to the Terminator. The
1024 CONFIRM_TRANSACTION in this case did not ask for reporting of hazards (see below) – if it
1025 had not, the TRANSACTION_CONFIRMED would have been sent at the same time as the
1026 CONFIRM messages.

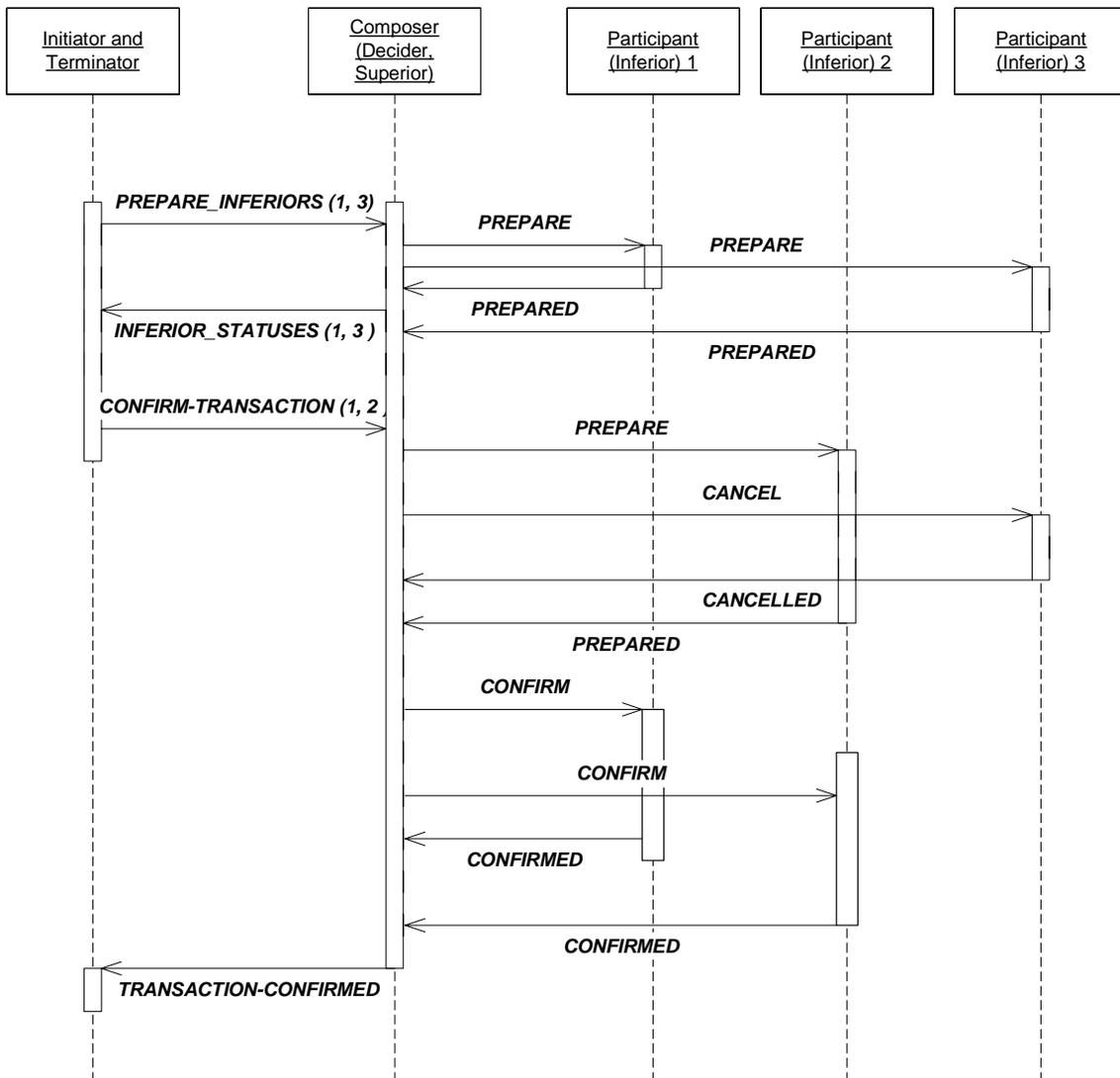


Figure 14 Termination sequence for a composer

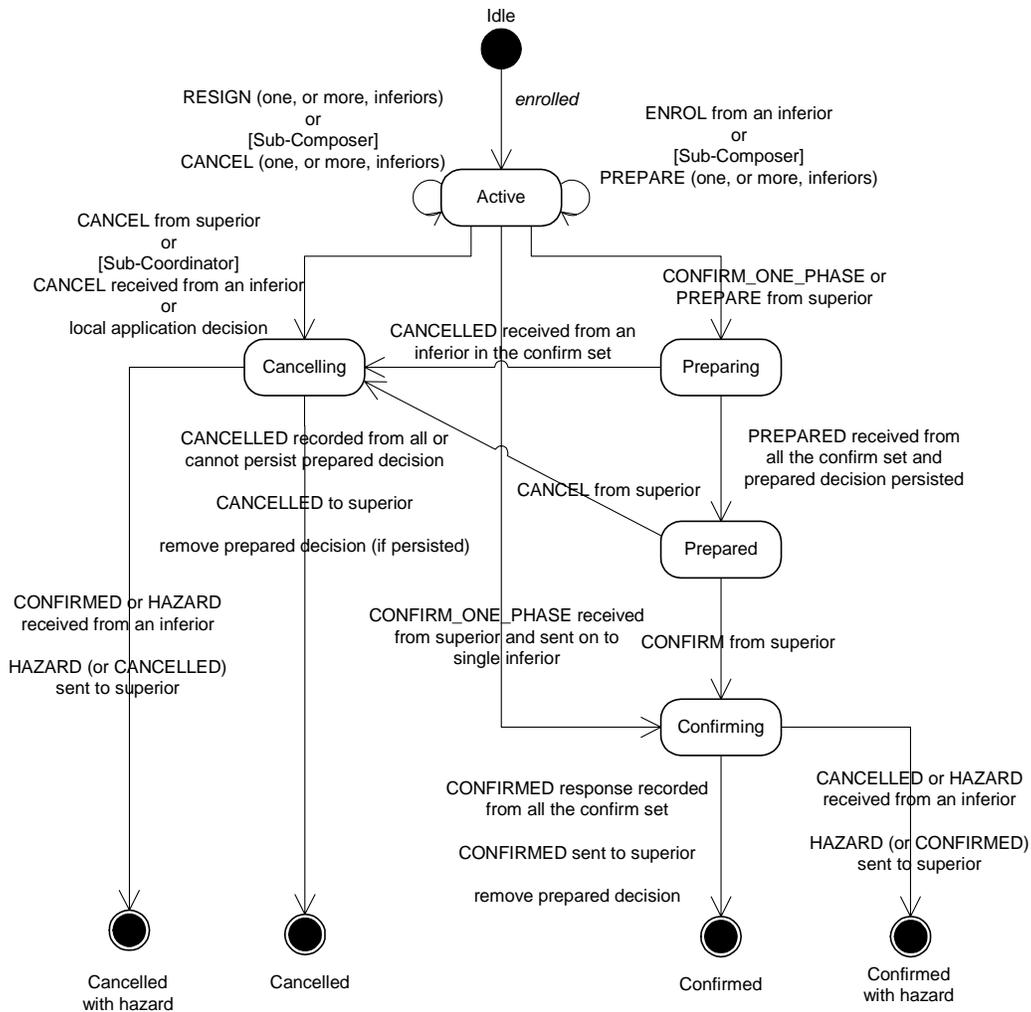
1027

1028 **Confirm-set of intermediates**

1029 An Intermediate, that is a Superior that is also an Inferior, also has a confirm-set, but this is
 1030 controlled rather differently to the top-most Superior (Decider) described above.

1031 As an Inferior, the interface between the application and BTP elements is not fully defined in this
 1032 specification. However, within the standard control relationship, issuing BEGIN with a related
 1033 CONTEXT to a Factory will cause the creation of a Sub-coordinator or Sub-composer (depending
 1034 on whether the BEGIN parameter asked for atomic or cohesive behaviour). Initially, of course,
 1035 the new Intermediate has no Inferiors – however, unlike a Participant (in the strict sense of the
 1036 term), it has a “superior-address” to which ENROL can be sent to enrol Inferiors. This address is
 1037 a field of the new CONTEXT.

1038 Figure 15 is a state diagram for a Sub-composer or Sub-coordinator.



1039

1040

Figure 15 State diagram for Sub-coordinator or Sub-composer

1041

The behaviour of the Intermediate towards its Inferiors, during the active phase, is basically the same as for the Decider:

1042

1043

- ENROL messages can be received, adding a new Inferior

1044

- Inferiors may resign - RESIGN is received from an Inferior. The Inferior is immediately removed from the set of Inferiors

1045

1046

- CANCELLED may be received from an Inferior

1047

- PREPARED may be received from an Inferior

1048

In some circumstances, receipt of an incoming message allows an Intermediate to determine that a state change for the whole transaction node takes place. The Intermediate is able to send messages to its Superior at its own initiative (whereas a Decider can only respond to a received message from the Terminator), so the receipt of a message from an Inferior can trigger the

1049

1050

1051

1052 sending of messages. This is especially the case if the Intermediate knows (from application
1053 knowledge, perhaps involving received or sent CONTEXT_REPLY messages) that there will be
1054 no further enrolments. In particular:

1055 • If CANCELLED is received from an Inferior, and this is a Sub-coordinator, the Sub-
1056 coordinator can itself cancel - CANCEL is sent to other Inferiors, and CANCELLED to
1057 the Superior

1058 • If RESIGN is received from the only Inferior and there will be no other enrolments, the
1059 Intermediate can itself resign, sending RESIGN to the Superior

1060 • If PREPARED is received from the [Inferior](#)~~Superior~~, it is known there will be no other
1061 enrolments and this is a Sub-coordinator, the Sub-coordinator can become prepared
1062 (assuming successful persistence of the appropriate information) and send PREPARED
1063 to the Superior.

1064 For a Sub-composer, application logic will invariably be involved in determining what effect a
1065 CANCELLED and PREPARED from an Inferior have – though in a real implementation, this
1066 logic may be delegated to the BTP-support software.

1067 The Intermediate may initiate cancellation or the two-phase outcome exchange, either as a result
1068 of receiving the corresponding message (CANCEL, PREPARE) from the Superior, or triggered
1069 by its own controlling application element. For a Sub-composer, this may be partial - a Sub-
1070 composer might be instructed by the application element to cancel some Inferiors and send
1071 PREPARE to others. Receipt of PREPARE from the Superior will often have a similar effect to a
1072 Decider receiving CONFIRM_TRANSACTION – PREPARE is propagated to all Inferiors that
1073 have not indicated they are PREPARED. However, exactly what happens on receiving PREPARE
1074 will depend on the application – receipt of the PREPARE may be visible to the application
1075 element and cause it to initiate further application activity (perhaps causing enrolment of new
1076 Inferiors) before it is determined whether to propagate PREPARE, and with a Sub-composer,
1077 some of the Inferiors may be instructed to cancel instead.

1078 Assuming the Intermediate does not cancel as a whole (in which case CANCEL would be sent to
1079 all Inferiors), the Intermediate will at some point attempt to become prepared. If it is a Sub-
1080 coordinator, this will require that PREPARED has been received from all Inferiors. For a Sub-
1081 composer, application logic will determine from which Inferiors PREPARED is required, with
1082 the others being cancelled. In either case, the Intermediate will persist the information about the
1083 Inferiors that are to be in the confirm-set and about the Superior, if this persisting is successful,
1084 send PREPARED to its own Superior.

1085 If CANCEL is subsequently received from the Superior, this is propagated to all the Inferiors and
1086 the persistent information removed (or effectively removed as far as recovery is concerned). It is
1087 not important which order this is done in, since the recovery sequence will ensure that a cancel
1088 outcome is eventually delivered anyway.

1089 If CONFIRM is received from the Superior (which can only be after sending PREPARED to the
1090 Superior), this is likewise propagated to the Inferiors. For a Sub-coordinator, CONFIRM is
1091 invariably sent to all Inferiors. However, for a Sub-composer it is possible further application
1092 logic intervenes and some of the Inferiors are rejected from the confirm-set at this late stage.

1093 (This can only occur when the application work, as defined by the contract to the Superior, can be
1094 performed by some sub-set of the Inferiors.) The Intermediate may, but is not required to, change
1095 the persistent information to reflect the confirm outcome (though a Sub-composer that selects
1096 only some Inferiors probably will need to re-write the information to ensure the correct subset are
1097 confirmed despite possible failures). If the information is not changed, then, on recovery, the
1098 Intermediate will find itself to be in a prepared state and will interrogate the Superior to re-
1099 determine the outcome. If the information is changed, a recovered Intermediate can immediately
1100 continue with ordering confirmation to its Inferiors.

1101 If CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE is received from the Superior, either before or after the Intermediate
1102 has become PREPARED, the effect is very similar to a Decider receiving
1103 CONFIRM_TRANSACTION. If there is only one Inferior, the CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE may
1104 be propagated to that Inferior. Otherwise, the Intermediate behaves as a Decider, making a
1105 confirm decision if it can.

1106 If one or more Inferiors make contradictory autonomous decisions, or HAZARD is received from
1107 an Inferior, the Intermediate may report this to the Superior using HAZARD. However, BTP does
1108 not require this. Since the Superior may be owned and controlled by a different organisation,
1109 there may be business reasons not to report such problems.

1110 **Optimisations and variations**

1111 **Spontaneous prepared**

1112 As described above, before a Superior can order confirmation to an Inferior, the Inferior must
1113 become “prepared”, meaning that it is ready to confirm or to cancel as it so ordered and send the
1114 PREPARED message as a report of this. In the conventional message sequence, as shown above,
1115 the Inferior attempts to become prepared when it receives a PREPARE message from the
1116 Superior. The PREPARE in turn is sent by the Superior when it receives an appropriate request
1117 from its controlling application (or from its own Superior, if there is one). The application
1118 controlling the Superior will request the sending of PREPARE when it determines that no further
1119 application work associated with this Inferior (or, perhaps with the whole business transaction)
1120 will occur.

1121 However, for some applications, the application element controlling the Inferior will know that
1122 the application work for which the Inferior will be responsible is complete before a PREPARE is
1123 sent from the Superior. In fact, because the application element has autonomy in determining how
1124 application work is to be allocated to Inferiors, it is possible for the Inferior-side application
1125 element to know the work is complete **for a particular Inferior** when Superior-side application
1126 element will be sending more message to the Inferior-side. (The future work will, probably,
1127 require the enrollment of additional Inferiors.)

1128 BTP consequently allows the application element controlling an Inferior to cause the Inferior to
1129 become prepared, and to send PREPARED to the Superior without PREPARE having been
1130 received from the Superior. From the perspective of the BTP Superior the Inferior sends
1131 PREPARED spontaneously. Apart from this, a spontaneous PREPARED message is the same as,
1132 and has the same effect and implications as one induced by a PREPARE message.

1133 **One-shot**

1134 In the “conventional” message sequence shown above and assuming the Initiator, Terminator and
1135 Coordinator on the one side, and “Service”, Enroller and Participant on the other are located
1136 within their respective parties, there are eight messages passed in one direction or the other
1137 between the two parties. There are four round-trip exchanges: the application request and
1138 response exchange, the ENROL/ENROLLED exchange (going in the opposite direction and
1139 overlapped with the application exchange), then PREPARE/PREPARED and the
1140 CONFIRM/CONFIRMED. However, if the application exchange is a single request/response, it
1141 is possible to reduce these eight to two round-trips– the first of which merges the first three of the
1142 conventional sequence. The fundamental two-phase nature of BTP (or any coordination
1143 mechanism) means there have to be at least two round trips – one before the confirm-or-cancel
1144 decision is made at the Superior, one after. This merging of the exchanges is termed “one-shot”,
1145 as it requires only one exchange to take the relationship from non-existent to waiting for the
1146 confirm-or-cancel decision.

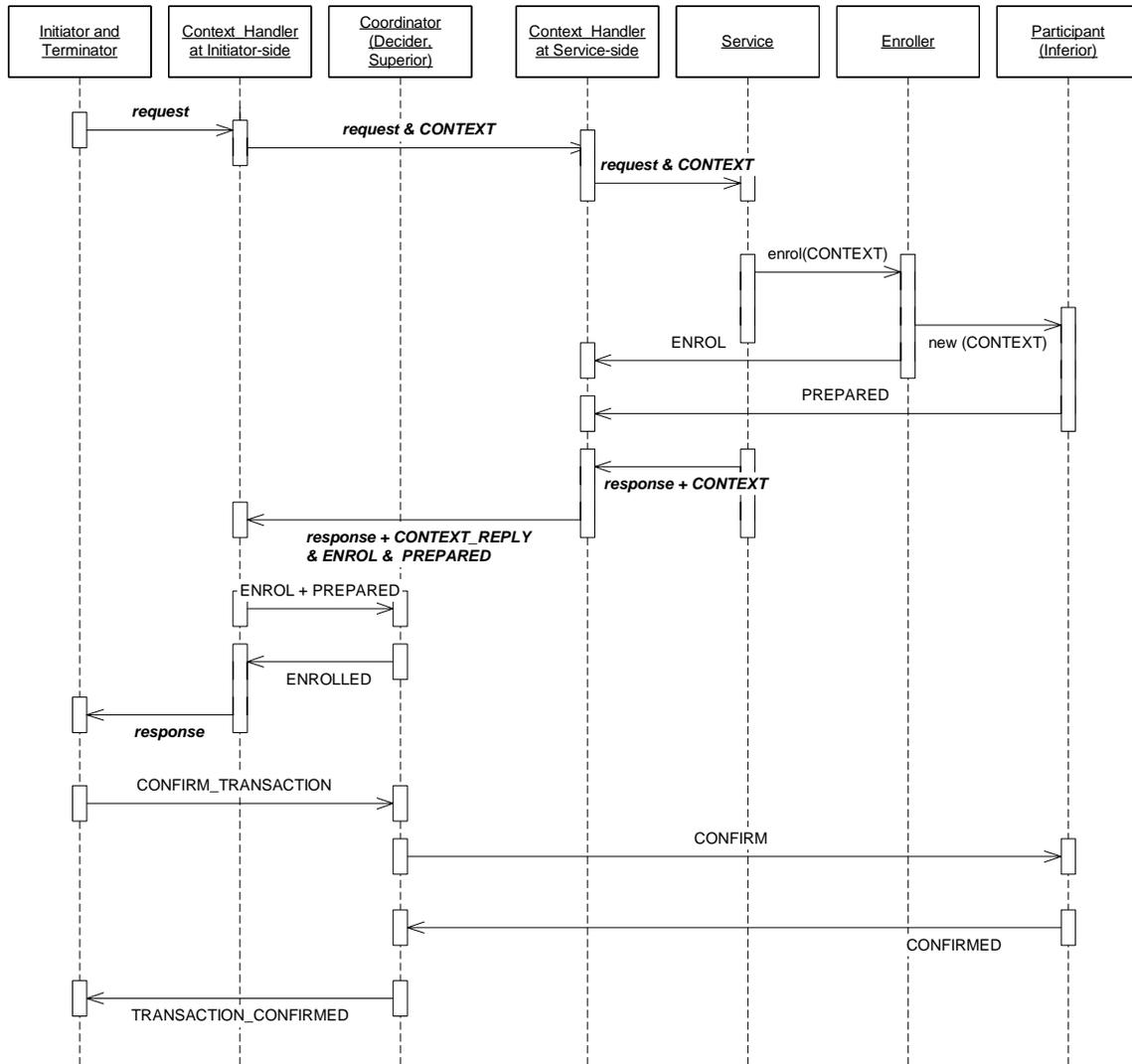
1147 Figure 16 shows a typical “one-shot” message sequence. The diagram distinguishes an additional
1148 aspect of the application elements, labelled “context-handler”. This is not a role in the BTP
1149 model, but is used only to distinguish a set of responsibilities and actions. In a real
1150 implementation these might be performed by the user application itself, or might be performed by
1151 the BTP-supporting infrastructure on the path between the application elements. (Figure 9 could
1152 be redrawn to show the context-handlers, but to no particular benefit) As in the conventional case,
1153 the CONTEXT is sent related to the application request (the creation of the CONTEXT by the
1154 Factory is not shown and is the same as the conventional case). The “context-handler” is aware of
1155 the sending of the CONTEXT.

1156 On the responder (service side), however, when the application element creates the Inferior, the
1157 ENROL is not sent immediately, but retained. The application performs the “provisional effect”
1158 implied by the received message and the Inferior becomes prepared and issues a PREPARED
1159 message, which is also retained. When the application response is available, it is sent with the
1160 retained messages and the CONTEXT_REPLY (which indicates that the related ENROL will
1161 complete the enrolments implied by the earlier transmission of the CONTEXT).

1162 When this group of messages is received by the context-handler on the client side, the contained
1163 ENROL and PREPARED messages are forwarded to the Superior (whose address was on the
1164 original CONTEXT and so is known to the context-handler). An ENROLLED message is sent
1165 back to the context-handler, assuring it that the enrolment was successful and the application can
1166 progress. If enrollment fails and the business transaction is atomic, confirmation must be
1167 prevented – this responsibility falls on the context-handler and the client application, since the
1168 failure of the enrolment implies that Superior itself is inaccessible. If enrolment fails and the
1169 business transaction is a cohesion, the appropriate response is a matter for the application.

1170 With “one-shot”, if there are multiple Inferiors created as a result of a single application message,
1171 there is an ENROL and PREPARED message for each one sent related with the
1172 CONTEXT_REPLY. If an operation fails, a CANCELLED message may be sent instead of a
1173 PREPARED – if the Superior is atomic, this will ensure it cancels, if cohesive, the client
1174 application will be aware of this and behave appropriately.

1175 Whether the “one-shot” mechanism is used is determined by the implementation on the
 1176 responding (Inferior) side. This may be subject to configuration and may also be constrained by
 1177 the application or by the binding in use.



1178

1179

Figure 16 A message sequence showing the “one-shot” optimisation

1180

Resignation

1181

After an Inferior is enrolled, it may be determined that the application work it is responsible for has no real effect – more exactly, that the counter-effect, if cancelled, and the final effect, if confirmed, will be identical. In such a case the Inferior can effectively un-enrol itself by sending a RESIGN message to the Superior. This can be done “spontaneously” (as far as BTP is concerned) or as a response to a received PREPARE message. It cannot be done after the Inferior has become prepared.

1186

1187

An Inferior from which RESIGN has been received is not considered an Inferior in discussion of the confirm-set – the phrase “remaining Inferiors” is used to mean only non-resigned Inferiors.

1188

1189 **One-phase confirmation**

1190 If a Coordinator or Composer that has been requested to confirm has only one (remaining)
1191 Inferior in the confirm-set, it may delegate the confirm-or-cancel decision to that Inferior, just
1192 requesting it to confirm rather than performing the two-phase exchange. This is done by sending
1193 the CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE message. Unlike the two-phase exchange (PREPARED received,
1194 CONFIRM sent), it is possible with CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE for a failure to occur that leads to
1195 the original Coordinator or Composer (and its controlling application element – the Terminator)
1196 being uncertain whether the outcome was confirmation or cancellation.

1197 **Autonomous cancel, autonomous confirm and contradictions**

1198 As described above, BTP does not require a Participant, while it is responsible for holding
1199 application resources such that can be confirmed or cancelled, to use any particular mechanism
1200 for maintaining this state. A Participant that “becomes prepared” may choose to let the
1201 “provisional effect” be identical to the “final effect”, and hold a compensating “counter effect”
1202 ready to implement cancellation; or it may make the provisional effect effectively null, and only
1203 perform the real application work as the final effect if confirmed; or the “provisional effect” may
1204 involve performance of the application work and locking application data against other access; or
1205 other patterns, as may be constrained or permitted by the application.

1206 Although a Participant is not required to lock data (as would be the case with some other
1207 transaction specifications) on becoming prepared, it is nevertheless in a state of doubt, and this
1208 doubt may have application or business implications. Accordingly it is recognised that a
1209 Participant (or, rather the business party controlling the application element and the Participant)
1210 may need to limit the promise made by sending PREPARED, and retain the right to apply its own
1211 decision to confirm or cancel to the Participant and the application effects it is responsible for.
1212 This is described as an “autonomous” decision. It is closely analogous to the heuristic decisions
1213 recognised in other transaction specifications. The only difference is the conceptual one that
1214 heuristic decisions are typically considered to occur only as a result of rare and unpredictable
1215 failure, whereas BTP recognises that the right to take an autonomous decision may be critical to
1216 the willingness of a business party to be involved in the business transaction at all. BTP therefore
1217 allows Participants (and all Inferiors) to indicate that there are limits on how long they are willing
1218 to promise to remain in the prepared state, and that after that time they may invoke their right of
1219 taking an autonomous decision.

1220 Taking an autonomous decision will of course run the risk of breaking the intended consistency of
1221 outcome across the business transaction, if the autonomous decision of the Inferior contradicts the
1222 decision (for this Inferior) made by the Superior. The Superior will have received the
1223 PREPARED message and thus be permitted to make a confirm decision (directly, or through
1224 exchanges with a Terminator application element or with its own Superior). An Inferior taking an
1225 autonomous decision informs the Superior by sending CONFIRMED or CANCELLED, as
1226 appropriate, without waiting for an outcome order from the Superior. This may cross the outcome
1227 message from the Superior, or the Superior may not make its decision till later. If the decisions
1228 agree, the normal CONFIRM or CANCEL message is sent. In the case of CANCEL, this
1229 completes the relationship – the CANCEL and CANCELLED messages acknowledge each other,
1230 regardless of which travels first. In the case of CONFIRM, another CONFIRMED message is
1231 needed.

1232 If the Superior's decision is contradicted by the autonomous decision, the Superior may need to
1233 record this, report it to management systems or inform the Terminator application or its own
1234 Superior. When this has been done (details are implementation-specific, but may be constrained
1235 by the application), the Superior sends a CONTRADICTION message to the Inferior. If an
1236 outcome message was sent earlier (crossing the announcement of the autonomous decision), the
1237 Inferior will already know there was a contradiction, but the receipt of the CONTRADICTION
1238 message informs the Inferior that the Superior knows and has done whatever it considers
1239 necessary to cope.

1240 As mentioned, BTP allows an Inferior to inform the Superior, with a qualifier on the PREPARED
1241 message, that the promise to remain in the prepared state will expire. In turn this allows the
1242 application on the Superior side to avoid risking a contradictory decision by making and sending
1243 its own decision in time. The Superior side can also indicate, with another qualifier, a minimum
1244 time for which it expects the prepared promise to remain valid.

1245

1246 As well as deliberate and forewarned autonomous decisions, BTP recognises that failures and
1247 exceptional conditions may force unplanned autonomous decisions. In the protocol sequence
1248 these are treated exactly like planned autonomous decisions – if they contradict, the Superior will
1249 be informed and a CONTRADICTION message sent to the Inferior.

1250 Autonomous decisions, planned or unplanned, are equivalent to the heuristic decisions of other
1251 transaction systems. The term is avoided in BTP since it may carry implications that it only
1252 occurs in an unplanned manner.

1253 **Recovery and failure handling**

1254 **Types of failure**

1255 BTP is designed to ensure the delivery of a consistent decision for a business transaction to the
1256 parties involved, even in the event of failure. Failures can be classified as:

1257 **Communication failure:** messages between BTP actors are lost and not delivered. BTP
1258 assumes the carrier protocol ensures that messages are either delivered correctly (without
1259 corruption) or are lost, but does not assume that all losses are reported nor that messages
1260 sent separately are delivered in the order of sending.

1261 **Node failure (system failure, site failure):** a machine hosting one or more BTP actors
1262 stops processing and all its volatile data is lost. BTP assumes a site fails by stopping – it
1263 either operates correctly or not at all, it never operates incorrectly.

1264 Communication failure may become known to a BTP implementation by an indication from the
1265 lower layers or may be inferred (or suspected) by the expiry of a timeout. Recovery from a
1266 communication failure requires only that the two actors can again send messages to each other
1267 and continue or complete the progress of the business transaction.

1268 A node failure is distinguished from communication failure because there is loss of volatile state.
1269 To ensure consistent application of the decision of a business transaction, BTP requires that some
1270 state information will be persisted despite node failure. Exactly what real events correspond to

1271 node failure but leave the persistent information undamaged is a matter for implementation
1272 choice, depending on application requirements; however, for most application uses, power failure
1273 should be survivable (an exception would be if the data manipulated by the associated operations
1274 was volatile). In all cases, there will be some level of event sufficiently catastrophic to lose
1275 persistent information and the ability to recover– destruction of the computer or bankruptcy of the
1276 organisation, for example.

1277 Recovery from node failure involves recreating an accessible communications endpoint in a
1278 network node that has access to the persistent information for incomplete transactions. This may
1279 be a recreation of the original actor using the same addresses; or using a different address; or
1280 there may be a distinct recovery entity, which can access the persistent data, but has a different
1281 address; other implementation approaches are possible. The recovered, and possibly relocated
1282 actor may or may not be capable of performing new application work Restoration of the actor
1283 from persistent information will often result in a partial loss of state, relative to the volatile state
1284 reached before the failure. In some states, there may be total loss of knowledge of the business
1285 transaction, including particular Superior:Inferior relationships. After recovery from node failure,
1286 the implementation behaves much as if a communication failure had occurred.

1287 Persistent information

1288 BTP **requires** that certain state information is persisted – these are information that records an
1289 Inferior’s decision to be prepared, a Superior’s decision to confirm and an Inferior’s autonomous
1290 decision . Requiring the first two to be persistent ensures that a consistent decision can be reached
1291 for the business transaction and that it is delivered to all involved nodes, despite failure.
1292 Requiring an Inferior’s autonomous decision to be persistent allows BTP to ensure that, if the
1293 autonomous decision is contradictory (i.e. opposite to the decision at the Superior), the
1294 contradiction will be reported to the Superior, despite failures.

1295 BTP also permits, but does not require, recovery of the Superior:Inferior relationship in the active
1296 state (unlike many transaction protocols, where a communication or node failure in active state
1297 would invariably cause rollback of the transaction). Recovery in the active state may require that
1298 the application exchange is resynchronised as well – BTP does not directly support this, but
1299 allows continuation of the business transaction if the application desires it. Apart from the
1300 (optional) recovery in active state, BTP follows the well-known presume-abort model – it is only
1301 **required** that information be persisted when decisions are made (and not, for example, on
1302 enrolment). This means that on recovery one side may have persistent information while the other
1303 does not. This occurs, among other cases, when an Inferior has decided to be prepared but the
1304 Superior never confirmed (so the decision is “presumed” to be cancelled), and when the Superior
1305 did confirm, the Inferior applied the confirmation and removed its persistent information but the
1306 acknowledgement message (CONFIRMED) was never received by the Superior.

1307 Information to be persisted when an Inferior decides to be prepared has to be sufficient to re-
1308 establish communication with the Superior, to apply a confirm decision and to apply a cancel
1309 decision. It will thus need to include the addressing and identification information for the
1310 Superior. The information needed to apply the confirm or cancel decision will depend on the
1311 application and the associated operations.

1312 A Superior must persist the corresponding information to allow it to re-establish communication
1313 with the Inferior – that is the addressing and identification information for the Inferior. When it

1314 must persist this information depends on its position within the transaction tree. If it is the top of
1315 the tree – i.e. it is the Decider for the business transaction -- it need only persist this information if
1316 and when it makes a decision to confirm (and, for a Cohesion, only if this Inferior is in the
1317 confirm-set). A Superior that is an intermediate in the tree – i.e. it is an Inferior to some other
1318 Superior – must persist the information about each of its own Inferiors as part of (or before)
1319 persisting its own decision to be prepared. For such an intermediate, the “decision to confirm” as
1320 Superior is made when either CONFIRM is received from its Superior or it makes an autonomous
1321 decision to confirm. If CONFIRM is received, the persistent information may be changed to show
1322 the confirm decision, but alternatively, the receipt of the CONFIRM can be treated as the decision
1323 itself and the CONFIRM message propagated to the Inferiors without changing the persistent
1324 information. If the persistent information is left unchanged and there is a node failure, on
1325 recovery the entity (as an Inferior) will be in a prepared state, and will rediscover the confirm
1326 decision (using the recovery exchanges to its Superior) before propagating it to its Inferior(s).

1327 Since BTP messages may carry application-specified qualifiers, and the BTP messages may be
1328 repeated if they are lost in transit (see next section), the persistent information may need to
1329 include sufficient to recreate the qualifiers, to allow them to be resent with their carrying BTP
1330 message. This applies both to qualifiers on PREPARED (which would be persisted by the
1331 Inferior) and on CONFIRM (which would be persisted by the Superior).

1332 In some cases, an implementation may not need to make an active change to have a persistent
1333 record of a decision, provided that the implementation will restore itself to the appropriate state
1334 on recovery. For example, an implementation that, as Inferior, always used the default-is-cancel
1335 mechanism, and recorded the timeout (to cancel) in the persistent information on becoming
1336 prepared, and always updated or removed that record when it applied a confirm instruction could
1337 treat the presence of an expired record as effectively a record of an autonomous cancel decision.

1338 **Recovery messages**

1339 Once the Superior:Inferior relationship has entered the completion phase – BTP does not
1340 generally use special messages in recovery, but merely permits the resending of the previous
1341 message – thus, for example, PREPARE, PREPARED, CANCEL, CONFIRM can all be sent
1342 repeatedly. Resending the previous message means a possible loss of the original message may be
1343 invisible to the receiver. The trigger for this re-sending is implementation dependent – a reported
1344 communication failure, a timeout expiry while waiting for a reply, the re-establishment of
1345 communications or the general restoration of function after a node failure are all possible triggers.
1346 An incoming repetition of the last message received, if it has already been replied to (e.g.
1347 receiving PREPARE after PREPARED has been sent), should normally trigger a resending of the
1348 last message sent – since that sent message may have got lost.⁴

1349 While in the active phase – i.e. prior to entering completion – there is no appropriate last message
1350 that can be sent. However, for active-phase recovery there needs to be some way for the BTP
1351 actors to determine that the peer is still there and still aware of the Superior:Inferior relationship.
1352 In this case, the peers can interrogate each other using the INFERIOR_STATE or

⁴ BTP’s capability of binding to alternative carrier protocols is part of the motivation for not having a distinct recovery message sequence, since the carrier binding does not necessarily have a well-defined communication failure indication.

1353 SUPERIOR_STATE messages, informing the peer of their own state and requesting a response –
1354 which may be the opposite message, or one of the main BTP messages (which perhaps had been
1355 lost). If it is another SUP|INFERIOR_STATE message, that reply does not ask for a response.
1356 Receiving a SUP|INFERIOR_STATE messages that asks for a response does not require an
1357 immediate response – especially if an implementation is waiting to determine a decision (perhaps
1358 because it is itself waiting for a decision from elsewhere), an implementation may choose not to
1359 reply until it wishes too.

1360 The SUP|INFERIOR_STATE messages are also used as replies when the receiver of **any** of the
1361 Superior:Inferior message has determined that there is no corresponding state information – the
1362 targeted Superior or Inferior does not exist (or is known to have completed and is no longer an
1363 active entity). The SUP|INFERIOR_STATE messages with a status of “unknown” is the
1364 indication that the state information does not exist.

1365 The SUP|INFERIOR_STATE messages are also available as replies to any Superior:Inferior
1366 message in the (transient, one hopes) case where, after failure an implementation cannot currently
1367 determine whether the persistent information exists or not, or what its state is, and so cannot give
1368 a definitive answer. The SUP|INFERIOR_STATE messages with a status of “inaccessible” is the
1369 indication that the existence of state information cannot be determined. The receiver of such a
1370 message should normally treat it as a “retry later” suggestion.

1371 **Redirection**

1372 As described above, BTP uses the presume-abort model for recovery. A corollary of this is that
1373 there are cases where one side will attempt to re-establish communication when there is no
1374 persistent information for the relationship at the far-end, because that side either never reached a
1375 state where the state was persisted, or had been persisted, but then progressed to remove the state
1376 information. In such cases, it is important the side that is attempting recovery can distinguish
1377 between unsuccessful attempts to connect to the holder of the persistent information and when the
1378 information no longer exists. If the peer information does not exist, the side that is attempting
1379 recovery can draw appropriate conclusions (that the peer either was never prepared, never
1380 confirmed or has already completed) and complete its part of the transaction; if it merely fails to
1381 get through, it is stuck in attempting recovery.

1382 Two mechanisms are provided to assist implementation flexibility while allowing completion of
1383 Superior:Inferior relationships when only one side has any persistent information. The
1384 mechanisms are:

- 1385 • Address fields which provide the address that will be used by the peer to send messages
1386 to an actor (effectively a “callback address”) can be a set of addresses, which are
1387 alternatives, one of which is chosen as the target address for the future message. If the
1388 sender of that message finds the address does not work, it can try a different alternative.
- 1389 • The REDIRECT message can be used to inform the peer that an address previously
1390 given is no longer valid and to supply a replacement address (or set of addresses).
1391 REDIRECT can be issued either as a response to receipt of a message or spontaneously.

1392 The two mechanisms can be used in combination, with one or more of the original set of
1393 addresses just being a redirector, which does not itself ever have direct access to the state
1394 information for the transaction, but will respond to any message with an appropriate REDIRECT.

1395 REDIRECT as a message is only used on the Superior:Inferior relationship, where each side
1396 holds the address of the other. On the other relationships (e.g. Terminator:Decider), one side (e.g.
1397 Terminator) has the address of the other, and initiates all the message exchanges. However, the
1398 entity whose address is known to the other may itself move - e.g. if a Coordinator, which will be
1399 both Decider and Superior changes its address as a Superior, it will probably change its address as
1400 a Decider too. In this case, a FAULT reply to a misdirected message can be used, assuming there
1401 is some entity available at, or on the path to the old address that understands BTP sufficiently to
1402 provide the redirection information.

1403 Some implementations, in which a single addressable entity with one, constant address deals with
1404 all transactions, distinguishing them by identifier, will not need to supply “backup” addresses
1405 (and would only use REDIRECT if permanently migrated).

1406 **Terminator:Decider failures and transaction timelimit**

1407 BTP does not provide facilities or impose requirements on the recovery of Terminator:Decider
1408 relationships, other than allowing messages to be repeated. A Terminator may survive failures (by
1409 retaining knowledge of the Decider’s address and identifier), but this is an implementation option.
1410 Although a Decider (if it decides to confirm) will persist information about the confirm decision,
1411 it is not required, after failure, to remain accessible using the address it originally gave to the
1412 Initiator (and used by the Terminator). Any such recovery is an implementation option.

1413 A Decider has no way of initiating a call to a Terminator to ensure that it is still active, and thus
1414 no way of detecting that a Terminator has failed. The Decider always has the right to initiate
1415 cancellation, but if the application (Terminator) and the Decider have different views about how
1416 long a “long time” is, then either the Decider might wait unnecessarily for a completion request
1417 (e.g. CONFIRM_TRANSACTION) that will never arrive, or it might initiate cancellation while
1418 the application is still active. To avoid these irritations, a standard qualifier “Transaction
1419 timelimit” can be used (by the Initiator) to inform the Decider when it can assume the Terminator
1420 will not request confirmation and so it (the Decider) should initiate cancellation.

1421 **Contradictions and hazard**

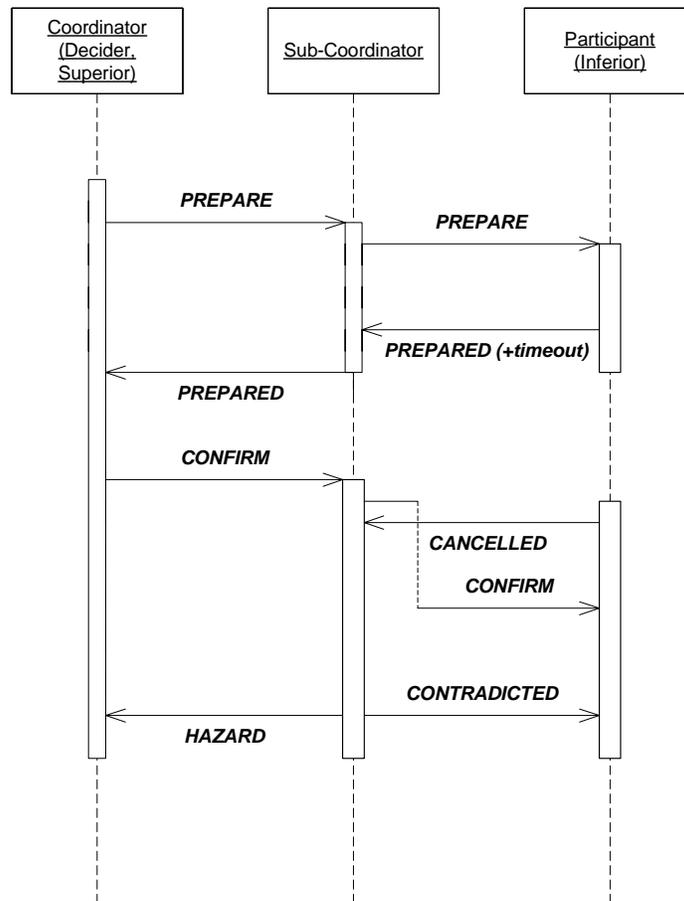
1422 As described above (see “Autonomous cancel, autonomous confirm and contradictions”), in
1423 some circumstances an Inferior may apply a decision that is contradictory to the decision of the
1424 Superior. This can occur in a semi-planned manner, when the Inferior has announced a timeout on
1425 the PREPARED message but no outcome message has been received, or as a result of an
1426 exceptional condition that forces the Inferior to break the promise implicit in PREPARED,
1427 regardless of timers. In both cases, this is considered an autonomous decision by the Inferior. An
1428 autonomous decision, of itself, does not imply a contradiction – it only results in a contradiction if
1429 the decision is opposite to that of the Superior (in the case of a cohesive Superior, opposite to the
1430 decision that applies to this Inferior).

1431 In order to ensure that a contradiction is detected despite node and communication failures, it is
1432 required that information about the taking of the autonomous decision be persisted until a BTP

1433 message received from the Superior indicates either that there was no contradiction (the decisions
1434 were in line – CANCEL is received after an autonomous cancel or CONFIRM is received after an
1435 autonomous confirm) or that the Superior is aware of the contradiction (CONTRADICTION is
1436 received). Note that the Inferior will become aware of the fact of the contradiction when it
1437 receives the “wrong” message, but must retain the record of its own decision until it receives the
1438 CONTRADICTION message, which tells it the Superior knows too.

1439 The Superior’s action on becoming aware of the contradiction is not determined by this
1440 specification. In particular, if the Superior is a Sub-coordinator or Sub-composer, it is not
1441 required by this specification to report the contradiction to its own Superior (which may, for
1442 example, be controlled by a different organisation). The Superior may report the problem to
1443 management systems or record it for manual repair. However, BTP does provide mechanisms to
1444 report the contradiction to the next higher Superior (if there is one) or to the Terminator
1445 application element.

1446 A contradiction occurring in an Inferior will usually mean the immediate Superior has a “mixed”
1447 condition – some of the application work it was responsible for has confirmed, some has
1448 cancelled (and contrary to any cohesion confirm-set selection). If the Superior is a Sub-
1449 coordinator or Sub-composer, it can report the mixed condition to its own Superior with the
1450 HAZARD message. If the Superior is the top-most in the tree, it can report the problem with the
1451 INFERIOR_STATUSES message, which will detail the state of all the Inferiors. Figure 17 shows
1452 a message sequence in a transaction tree with two levels. The Participant makes an autonomous
1453 cancel decision, but the Coordinator decides to confirm. The confirm decision from the
1454 Coordinator, passed on by the Sub-coordinator crosses with the CANCELLED message from the
1455 Participant. The Participant waits for the CANCELLED from the Sub-coordinator, which chooses
1456 to report the problem with HAZARD to the Coordinator.



1457

1458

Figure 17 Message sequence showing contradiction, reported with HAZARD

1459

If a Sub-coordinator or Sub-composer having sent (or attempted to send) the outcome message to its Inferiors, is temporarily unable to get a response (CONFIRMED or CANCELLED), it may either wait until a response does come back or choose to reply to its own Superior with a HAZARD message indicating that a contradiction is “possible”. If it does choose to send HAZARD, it is required to persist a record of this until it receives a CONTRADICTION message from the Superior, or a message from the Inferior indicating there was no contradiction in fact.

1465

HAZARD is also used to indicate that it has become impossible to cleanly and consistently achieve either a confirmed or a cancelled state for the application work. In this case, there is can be no guarantee that the problem will be reliably reported – especially because it may be the inability to persist information that is the cause of the problem.

1469

Relation of BTP to application and carrier protocols

1470

BTP messages are communicated between actors in two distinguishable circumstances:

1471

- a) in establishing and progressing the outcome and control relationships between BTP actors, and between application elements and BTP actors – Initiator:Factory, Terminator:Decider, Superior:Inferior etc.

1472

1473

1474 b) in association with application messages that are communicated between application
1475 elements.

1476 In the first case, interoperable communication requires a specification of how the abstract BTP
1477 messages are represented and encoded, and how they are transmitted. This specification is a
1478 **carrier protocol binding** (or just “binding”, if the context is clear). BTP allows bindings to a
1479 multiplicity of carrier protocols. The only requirement that BTP makes is that the transmission of
1480 a message either delivers an uncorrupted message or fails. BTP does not require that the carrier
1481 report failure to deliver a message, to either side, nor that messages are delivered in the order they
1482 are sent (though implementations can take advantage of information from a richer carrier, which
1483 can improve performance in various ways). BTP messages communicated in this way have
1484 semantics that are defined in this specification – a PREPARE message (for example), refers back
1485 to the ENROL via the “inferior-identifier” parameter and is an instruction to the Inferior to
1486 become and report that it is prepared.

1487 In the second case, the full semantics cannot be defined in this specification. Interoperation with
1488 BTP requires that the parties have a common understanding of what is being confirmed or
1489 cancelled, but this mutual understanding is defined by the contract of the application, not by BTP.
1490 (The contract may be explicit or implicit, declared by one side as take-it-or-leave-it, or may be
1491 negotiated in some way.) Part of this contract will include how the combination of the application
1492 protocol (i.e. the application messages and their sequencing) and BTP operate such that the two
1493 sides are agreed as to which application operations are part of which business transaction. This
1494 will often be achieved by sending application messages and BTP messages in “association” in
1495 some way – thus an application message sent in association with a CONTEXT can be specified
1496 (by the application contract) to mean that if work is done as result of the receipt of the message,
1497 one or more Inferiors should be enrolled to apply the confirm/cancel decision to that work.
1498 Similarly, an application message may be sent associated with an ENROL with the contractual
1499 understanding that the message refers to some application work that has been made the
1500 responsibility of the Inferior being enrolled.

1501 The concrete representation of this “association” is also a matter for the application protocol
1502 specification. There are several ways this can be done, including:

- 1503 • the BTP message is contained within the application message, or both are contained
1504 within a larger construct;
- 1505 • the application message contains a field that is the superior-identifier or inferior-
1506 identifier that is also present on the CONTEXT or the ENROL
- 1507 • the BTP message contains a qualifier that references (a field of) the application message
1508 in some way (e.g. if the application message is an invoice, the qualifier might contain the
1509 invoice number)
- 1510 • the encoding of the BTP and application messages reference each other (e.g. using XML
1511 id and refid attributes)

1512 In all cases, the application specification⁵ will need to define the mechanism so that both parties
1513 have common understanding. Many applications will use the same mechanism and their
1514 specifications can therefore take advantage of standard patterns, and their implementations of
1515 standard tools.

1516 The association of an application message with a BTP message is analogous to the concept of
1517 “related” BTP messages. “Related” BTP messages are sent as a group, with a declared and
1518 defined semantic for the group. Associated application and BTP messages can be considered as
1519 “related”, with the proviso that the semantic is defined by the application, not by BTP.

1520 There is no necessary relationship between how the application messages and any associated BTP
1521 messages are transmitted by carrier protocols, and the carrier binding for the BTP messages. BTP
1522 messages are invariably sent to a BTP actor whose address has been passed to the sender by some
1523 means – thus a CONTEXT contains the address of the Superior to which ENROLs will be sent,
1524 and the ENROL contains the address of the Inferior. Similarly, BEGUN contains the address (as
1525 Decider) of the new Composer or Coordinator. These addresses are all sets of addresses (possibly
1526 of cardinality one), and each individual address identifies which binding is to be used. Thus, for
1527 example, when a CONTEXT is sent associated with an application message, the ENROL will
1528 travel on a carrier binding identified by the particular address from the CONTEXT that the
1529 Enroller chooses to use – which may have no relationship to how the application message arrived.

1530 Despite this, it will be common that the application binding and the BTP binding will use the
1531 same carrier. This is the case in the bindings specified in this edition of the specification, which
1532 define a binding of BTP to SOAP 1.1 over HTTP. Included in this SOAP/HTTP binding
1533 specification, are rules that allow an application to associate (relate) a single CONTEXT or a
1534 single ENROL (carried in the SOAP header) with the application message(s) carried in the SOAP
1535 body.

1536 **Other elements**

1537 **Identifiers**

1538 An Identifier is a globally unambiguous identification of the state corresponding to one of
1539 Decider, Superior or Inferior. Where a single entity has more than one of these roles (at the same
1540 node in the same transaction, as with a Sub-coordinator that is both Superior and Inferior), the
1541 Identifiers may be the same or different, at implementation option - they are distinguished by
1542 which messages the Identifier is used on. (A Superior has only one Superior-identifier, although it
1543 may be in multiple Superior:Inferior relationships, each with a separate state in terms of the state
1544 table).

1545 The state identified by an Identifier can be accessed by BTP messages sent to any of the addresses
1546 supplied with the Identifier in the appropriate message (CONTEXT, BEGUN, ENROL), or as
1547 updated by REDIRECT. An Identifier itself has no location implications. (Identifiers are
1548 specified, in the XML representation, as syntactically URIs - by their use as names of BTP

⁵ The “application specification”, or “application protocol specification” may be very informal or may be a standardised agreement.

1549 entities, they are URNs. If an Identifier happens to specify an network location (i.e. it is a URL),
1550 it is treated as an opaque value by BTP)

1551 Identifiers are specified as being globally unambiguous - the same Identifier only ever identifies
1552 one Decider, Superior or Inferior over all systems and all time. In practice, an Identifier could be
1553 re-used if there is no possibility of the colliding values being confused. However implementations
1554 are recommended to use truly unambiguous Identifiers (that is to use them as URNs).

1555 **Addresses**

1556 In most cases, BTP actors that need to communicate are informed of each others addresses from
1557 received BTP messages. When an Inferior is to be enrolled, a CONTEXT message which
1558 contains the address of the Superior will have been received or otherwise passed to the Enroller
1559 and the Inferior. The ENROL message received by the Superior contains the address of the
1560 Inferior. The BEGUN returned from a Factory to the Initiator contains the address of the Decider,
1561 and this can be passed to the Terminator or any Status Requestor.

1562 The addresses carried in these messages (which are effectively “call-back” addresses, to be used
1563 as the destination of future messages) are sets of tripartite addresses. Each contains an identifier
1564 (binding name) for the binding to an underlying transport, or carrier protocol, a “binding
1565 address”, in a format specific to the carrier which is the information necessary to connect using
1566 that carrier, and an optional additional information field. This additional information is opaque to
1567 all but the future destination (which also created this address for itself) and is used however the
1568 implementation there wishes (e.g. it can be used to distinguish a particular program object, or to
1569 relay on, perhaps over a different protocol). The multiple members of the set allow support of
1570 multiple carrier bindings (including both different versions of standard bindings and proprietary
1571 bindings) and for relocation of the BTP actor.

1572 When a message is actually to be sent, the sender, possessing the set of addresses for the
1573 destination, chooses one - restricting its choice to bindings that it supports obviously, but not
1574 otherwise constrained by the specification. The binding address will be used by the senders
1575 carrier implementation (depending on the protocol, the address may or may not be transmitted –
1576 with http, for example, it is), The additional information, if present, will be included in the BTP
1577 message. The chosen address is considered the “target-address” when considering the abstract
1578 message, but only the additional information will normally appear within the encoded BTP-
1579 message (the encoding used is part of the binding specification, which could require that all of the
1580 address is (redundantly) transmitted, if the specifier so chose).

1581 Where a BTP message invokes a reply – as with the Initiator:Factory, Terminator:Decider and
1582 Status Requestor:various roles – the receiver (Factory, Decider, etc) of the message will not know
1583 *a priori* the address of the sender. Accordingly, in these cases the abstract messages are specified
1584 as containing a single “reply-address”. Depending on the binding, and the particular use of the
1585 binding, the “reply-address” may be directly represented in the encoding of the BTP message, or
1586 may be implicit in the carrier protocol. Similar considerations apply in the Superior:Inferior
1587 relationship, where although the addresses are normally known by the other side, there are cases
1588 when a message is received, and must be responded to, but the peer is unknown. Accordingly, the
1589 Superior:Inferior messages contain (in abstract) a single “senders-address”. As with the “reply-
1590 address”es, it may be implicit in the carrier protocol.

1591 The CONTEXT message does not contain a “target-address”, even as an abstract message, as it is
1592 never transmitted between BTP actors on its own – it is always either related to a BTP BEGIN or
1593 BEGUN message, or is passed between application elements with some (application-detailed)
1594 association with application messages.

1595 **Qualifiers**

1596 Qualifiers are elements of the BTP messages used to exchange additional information between
1597 the actors. Qualifiers can be specified in the BTP specification (“standard qualifiers”), by industry
1598 groups, by BTP implmentors or for the purposes of particular applications. Of the standard
1599 qualifiers in this version of the specification some are constraints on the BTP contract, such as
1600 time limits, and some are further identifiers used to distinguish specific parties in the BTP
1601 interchange. Non-standard qualifiers could extend the protocol or carry application-specific
1602 information.

1603 Part 2. Normative Specification of BTP

1604 **Actors, Roles and Relationships**

1605 Actors are software agents which process computations. BTP actors are addressable for the
1606 purposes of receiving application and BTP protocol messages transmitted over some underlying
1607 communications or carrier protocol. (See section “Addressing” for more detail.)

1608 BTP actors play roles in the sending, receiving and processing of messages. These roles are
1609 associated with responsibilities or obligations under the terms of software contracts defined by
1610 this specification. (These contracts are stated formally in the sections entitled “Abstract Messages
1611 and Associated Contracts” and “State Tables”.) A BTP actor’s computations put the contracts into
1612 effect.

1613 A role is defined and described in terms of a single business transaction. An implementation
1614 supporting a role may, as an addressable entity, play the same role in multiple business
1615 transactions, simultaneously or consecutively, or a separate addressable entity may be created for
1616 each transaction. This is a choice for the implementer, and the addressing mechanisms allow
1617 interoperation between implementations that make different choices.

1618 Within a single transaction, one actor may play several roles, or each role may be assigned to a
1619 distinct actor. This is again a choice for the implementer. An actor playing a role is termed an
1620 “actor-in-role”.

1621 Actors may interoperate, in the sense that the roles played by actors may be implemented using
1622 software created by different vendors for each actor-in-role. The section “Conformance”, gives
1623 guidelines on the groups of roles that may be implemented in a partial, interoperable
1624 implementation of BTP.

1625 The descriptions of the roles concentrate on the normal progression of a business transaction, and
1626 some of the more important divergences from this. They do not cover all exception cases – the
1627 message set definition and the state tables provide a more comprehensive specification.

1628 *Note – A BTP role is approximately equivalent to an interface in some distributed*
1629 *computing mechanisms, or a port-type in WSDL. The definition of a role includes*
1630 *behaviour.*

1631 **Relationships**

1632 There are two primary relationships in BTP.

- 1633 • Between an application element that determines that a business transaction should be
1634 completed (the role of Terminator) and the BTP actor at the top of the transaction tree (the
1635 role of Decider);
- 1636 • Between BTP actors within the tree, where one (the Superior) will inform the other (the
1637 Inferior) what the outcome decision is.

1638 These primary relationships are involved in arriving at a decision on the outcome of a business
1639 transaction, and propagating that decision to all parties to the transaction. Taking the path that is
1640 followed when a business transaction is confirmed:

- 1641 1. The Terminator determines that the business transaction should confirm, if it can; or
1642 (for a Cohesion), which parts should confirm
- 1643 2. The Terminator asks the Decider to apply the desired outcome to the tree, if it can
1644 guarantee the consistency of the confirm decision
- 1645 3. The Decider, which is Superior to one or more Inferiors, asks its Inferiors if they can
1646 agree to a confirm decision (for a Cohesion, this may not be all the Inferiors)
- 1647 4. If any of those Inferiors are also Superiors, they ask their Inferiors and so on down
1648 the tree
- 1649 5. Inferiors that are not Superiors report if they can agree to a confirm to their Superior
- 1650 6. Inferiors that are also Superiors report their agreement only if they received such
1651 agreement from their Inferiors, and can agree themselves
- 1652 7. Eventually agreement (or not) is reported to the Decider. If all have agreed, the
1653 Decider makes and persists the confirm decision (hence the term “Decider” – it
1654 decides, everything else just asked); if any have disagreed, or if the confirm decision
1655 cannot be persisted, a cancel decision is made
- 1656 8. The Decider, as Superior tells its Inferiors of the outcome
- 1657 9. Inferiors that are also Superiors tell their Inferiors, recursively down the tree
- 1658 10. The Decider replies to the Terminator’s request to confirm, reporting the outcome
1659 decision

1660 There are other relationships that are secondary to Terminator:Decider, Superior:Inferior, mostly
1661 involved in the establishment of the primary relationships. The various particular relationships
1662 can be grouped as the “control” relationships – primarily Terminator:Decider, but also
1663 Initiator:Factory; and the “outcome” relationships – primarily Superior:Inferior, but also
1664 Enroller:Superior.

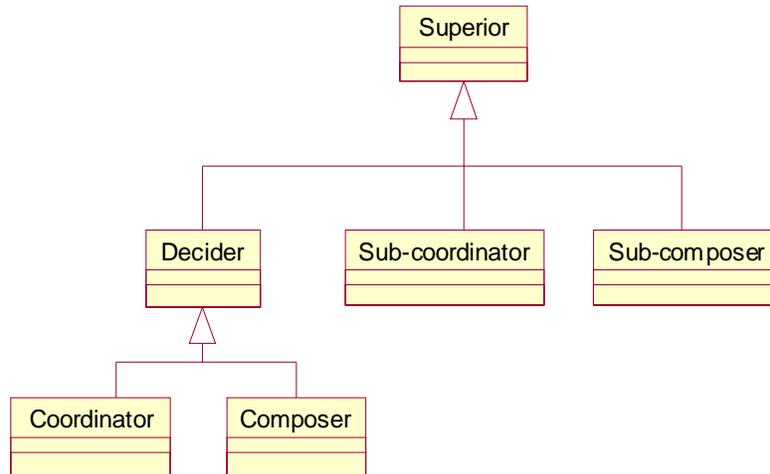
1665 The two groups of relationships are linked in that a Decider is a Superior to one or more Inferiors.
1666 There are also similarities in the semantics of some of the exchanges (messages) within the
1667 relationships. However they differ in that

- 1668 1. All exchanges between Terminator and Decider are initiated by the Terminator (it is
1669 essentially a request/response relationship); either of Superior or Inferior may initiate
1670 messages to the other
- 1671 2. The Superior:Inferior relationship is recoverable – depending on the progress of the
1672 relationship, the two sides will re-establish their shared state after failure; the
1673 Terminator:Decider relationship is not recoverable

1674 3. The nature of the Superior:Inferior relationship requires that the two parties know of
1675 each other's addresses from when the relationship is established; the Decider does not
1676 need to know the address of the Terminator (provided it has some way of returning
1677 the response to a received message).

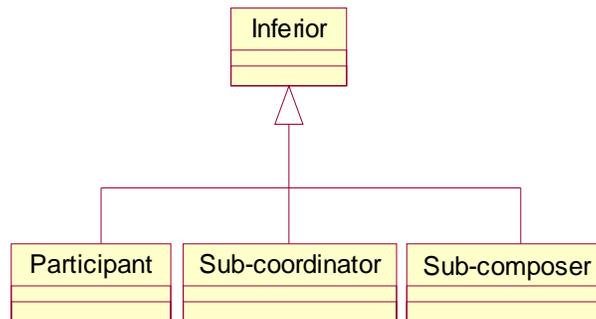
1678 **Roles**

1679 Figure 18 and Figure 19 show the BTP roles that are specialisations of the central Superior and
1680 Inferior roles.



1681
1682

Figure 18 Superior and derived roles



1683
1684

Figure 19 Inferior and derived roles

1685 In the following sections, the responsibility of each role is defined, and the messages that are sent
1686 or received by that role are listed. Note that some roles exist only to have a name for an actor that
1687 issues a message and receives a reply to that message. Some of these roles may be played by
1688 several actors in the course of a single business transaction.

1689 For each role, a table shows which messages are received and sent. Where the messages appear
1690 on the same line, the second is a reply to the first. (Consequently the columns are sometimes sent
1691 first, received second, sometimes vice versa.)

1692 **Roles involved in the outcome relationships**

1693 **Superior**

1694 Accepts enrolments of Inferiors from Enrollers, establishing a Superior:Inferior relationship with
1695 each. In cooperation with other actors and constrained by the messages exchanged with the
1696 Inferior, the Superior determines the **Outcome** applicable to the Inferior and informs the Inferior
1697 by sending CONFIRM or CANCEL. This outcome can be confirm only if a PREPARED message
1698 is received from the Inferior, and if a record, identifying the Inferior can be persisted. (Whether
1699 this record is also a record of a confirm decision depends on the Superior's position in the
1700 business transaction as a whole.). The Superior must retain this persistent record until it receives a
1701 CONFIRMED (or, in exceptional cases, CANCELLED or HAZARD) from the Inferior.

1702 A Superior may delegate the taking of the confirm or cancel decision to an Inferior, if there is
1703 only one Inferior, by sending CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE.

1704 A Superior may be *Atomic* or *Cohesive*; an Atomic Superior will apply the same decision to all of
1705 its Inferiors; a Cohesive Superior may apply confirm to some Inferiors and cancel to others, or
1706 may confirm some after others have reported cancellation. The set of Inferiors that the Superior
1707 confirms (or attempts to confirm) is called the “confirm-set”.

1708 If RESIGN is received from an Inferior, the Superior:Inferior relationship is ended; the Inferior
1709 has no further effect on the behaviour of the Superior as a whole.

Superior receives	Superior sends
ENROL	ENROLLED
	PREPARE
	CONFIRM
	CANCEL
	RESIGNED
	CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE
	CONTRADICTION
	SUPERIOR_STATE
PREPARED	
CONFIRMED	
CANCELLED	
HAZARD	
RESIGN	
INFERIOR_STATE	
REQUEST_STATUS	STATUS
REQUEST_INFERIORS_STATUS	INFERIOR_STATUSES

1710

1711 Receipt of ENROL establishes a new Superior:Inferior relationship (unless the ENROL is a
1712 duplicate). ENROLLED is sent only if a reply is asked for on the ENROL.

1713 **Inferior**

1714 Responsible for applying the Outcome to some set of associated operations – the application
 1715 determines which operations are the responsibility of a particular Inferior.

1716 An Inferior is **Enrolled** with a single Superior (hereafter referred to as “its Superior”),
 1717 establishing a Superior:Inferior relationship. If the Inferior is able to ensure that either a confirm
 1718 or cancel decision can be applied to the associated operations, and can persist information to
 1719 retain that condition, it sends a PREPARED message to the Superior. When the Outcome is
 1720 received from the Superior, the Inferior applies it, deletes the persistent information, and replies
 1721 with CANCELLED or CONFIRMED as appropriate.

1722 If an Inferior is unable to come to a prepared state, it cancels the associated operations and
 1723 informs the Superior with a CANCELLED message. If it is unable to either come to a prepared
 1724 state, or to cancel the associated operations, it informs the Superior with a HAZARD message.

1725 An Inferior that has become prepared may, exceptionally, make an autonomous decision to be
 1726 applied to the associated operations, without waiting for the Outcome from the Superior. It is
 1727 required to persist this autonomous decision and report it to the Superior with CONFIRMED or
 1728 CANCELLED as appropriate. If, when CONFIRM or CANCEL is received, the autonomous
 1729 decision and the decision received from the Superior are contradictory, the Inferior must retain
 1730 the record of the autonomous decision until receiving a CONTRADICTION message.

Inferior receives	Inferior sends
PREPARE	
CONFIRM	
CANCEL	
RESIGNED	
CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE	
CONTRADICTION	
SUPERIOR_STATE	
	PREPARED
	CONFIRMED
	CANCELLED
	HAZARD
	RESIGN
	INFERIOR_STATE
REQUEST_STATUS	STATUS
REQUEST_INFERIORS_STATUS	INFERIOR_STATUSES

1731

1732 **Enroller**

1733 Causes the enrolment of an Inferior with a Superior. This role is distinguished because in some
 1734 implementations the enrolment request will be performed by the application, in some the
 1735 application will ask the actor that will play the role of Inferior to enrol itself, and a Factory may
 1736 enrol a new Inferior (which will also be Superior) as a result of receiving BEGIN&CONTEXT.

Enroller sends	Enroller receives
ENROL	ENROLLER

1737

1738 ENROLLED is received only if the Enroller asked for a response when the ENROL was sent.

1739 An ENROL message sent from an Enroller that did not require an ENROLLED response may be
 1740 modified *en route* to the Superior by an intermediate actor to ask for an ENROLLED response to
 1741 be sent to the intermediate. (This may occur in the “one-shot” scenario, where an ENROL/no-rsp-
 1742 req is received in relation to a CONTEXT_REPLY/related; the receiver of the
 1743 CONTEXT_REPLY will need to ensure the enrolment is successful).

1744 Participant

1745 An Inferior which is specialized for the purposes of an application. Some application operations
 1746 are associated directly with the Participant, which is responsible for determining whether a
 1747 prepared condition is possible for them, and for applying the outcome. (“associated directly” as
 1748 opposed to involving another BTP Superior:Inferior relationship, in which this actor is the
 1749 Superior).

1750 The associated operations may be performed by the actor that has the role of Participant, or they
 1751 may be performed by another actor, and only the confirm/cancel application is performed by the
 1752 Participant.

1753 In either case, the Participant, as part of becoming prepared (i.e. before it can send PREPARED
 1754 to the Superior), will persist information allowing it apply a confirm decision to the operations
 1755 and to apply a cancel decision. The nature of this information depends on the operations.

1756 *Note – Possible approaches are:*

- 1757 • *The operations may be performed completely and the Participant persists*
 1758 *information to perform counter-effect operations (compensating operations) to*
 1759 *apply cancellation;*
- 1760 • *The operations may be just checked and not performed at all; the Participant*
 1761 *persists information to perform them to apply confirmation;*
- 1762 • *The Participants persists the prior state of data affected by the operations and the*
 1763 *operations are performed; the Participant restores the prior state to apply*
 1764 *cancellation;*
- 1765 • *As the previous, but other access to the affected data is forbidden until the decision*
 1766 *is known*

1767 Since a Participant is an Inferior, it sends and receives the messages for an Inferior.

1768 Sub-coordinator

1769 An Inferior which is also an Atomic Superior.

1770 A sub-coordinator is the Inferior in one Superior:Inferior relationship and the Superior in one or
 1771 more Superior:Inferior relationships.

1772 From the perspective of its Superior (the one the sub-coordinator is Inferior to), there is no
1773 difference between a sub-coordinator and any other Inferior. From this perspective, the
1774 “associated operations” of the sub-coordinator as an Inferior include the relationships with its
1775 Inferiors.

1776 A sub-coordinator does not become prepared (and send PREPARED to its Superior) until and
1777 unless it has received PREPARED (or RESIGN) from all its Inferiors. The outcome is propagated
1778 to all Inferiors.

1779 Since a Sub-coordinator is both an Inferior and a Superior, it sends and receives the messages for
1780 both.

1781 **Sub-composer**

1782 An Inferior which is also a Cohesive Superior.

1783 Like a sub-coordinator, a sub-composer cannot be distinguished from any other Inferior from the
1784 perspective of its Superior.

1785 A sub-composer is similar to a sub-coordinator, except that the constraints linking the different
1786 Inferiors concern only those Inferiors in the confirm-set. How the confirm-set is controlled, and
1787 when, is not defined in this specification.

1788 If the sub-composer is instructed to cancel, by receiving a CANCEL message from its Superior,
1789 the cancellation is propagated to all its Inferiors.

1790 Since a Sub-composer is both an Inferior and a Superior, it sends and receives the messages for
1791 both.

1792 **Roles involved in the control relationships**

1793 **Decider**

1794 A Superior that is not also the Inferior on a Superior:Inferior relationship. It is the top-node in the
1795 transaction tree and receives requests from a Terminator as to the desired outcome for the
1796 business transaction. If the Terminator asks the Decider to confirm the business transaction, it is
1797 the responsibility of the Decider to finally take the confirm decision. The taking of the decision is
1798 synonymous with the persisting of information identifying the Inferiors that are to be confirmed.
1799 An Inferior cannot be confirmed unless PREPARED has been received from it.

1800 A Decider is instructed to cancel by receiving CANCEL_TRANSACTION.

1801 A Decider that is an Atomic Superior (all Inferiors will have the same outcome) is a Coordinator.
1802 A Decider that is a Cohesive Superior (some Inferiors may cancel, some confirm) is a Cohesion.

Decider receives	Decider sends
CONFIRM_TRANSACTION	TRANSACTION_CONFIRMED TRANSACTION_CANCELLED INFERIOR_STATUSES

Decider receives	Decider sends
CANCEL_TRANSACTION	TRANSACTION_CANCELLED INFERIOR_STATUSES
REQUEST_INFERIOR_STATUSES	INFERIOR_STATUSES

1803

1804 A Decider is also a Superior and thus sends and receives the messages for a Superior.

1805 **Coordinator**

1806 A Decider that is an Atomic Superior. The same outcome decision will be applied to all Inferiors
1807 (excluding any from which RESIGN is received).

1808 PREPARED must be received from all remaining Inferiors for a confirm decision to be taken.

1809 A Coordinator must make a cancel decision if

- 1810 • it is instructed to cancel by the Terminator
- 1811 • if CANCELLED is received from any Inferior
- 1812 • if it is unable to persist a confirm decision

1813 Since a Coordinator is a Decider, it receives the messages appropriate for a Decider and a
1814 Superior.

1815 **Composer**

1816 A Decider that is a Cohesive Superior. If the Terminator requests confirmation of the Cohesion,
1817 that request will determine the confirm-set of the Cohesion.

1818 PREPARED must be received from all Inferiors in the confirm-set (excluding any from which
1819 RESIGN is received) for a confirm decision to be taken.

1820 A Composer must make a cancel decision (applying to all Inferiors) if

- 1821 • it is instructed to cancel by the Terminator
- 1822 • if CANCELLED is received from any Inferior in the confirm-set
- 1823 • if it is unable to persist a confirm decision

1824 A Composer may be asked to prepare some or all of its Inferiors by receiving
1825 PREPARE_INFERIORS. It issues PREPARE to any of those Inferiors from which none of
1826 PREPARED, CANCELLED or RESIGN have been received, and replies to the
1827 PREPARE_INFERIORS with INFERIOR_STATUSES.

1828 A Composer may be asked to cancel some of its Inferiors, but not itself, by receiving
1829 CANCEL_INFERIORS.

Composer receives	Composer sends
PREPARE_INFERIORS	INFERIOR_STATUSES
CANCEL_INFERIORS	INFERIOR_STATUSES

1830 Terminator

1831 Asks a Decider to confirm the business transaction, or instructs it to cancel all or (for a Cohesion)
1832 part of the business transaction.

1833 All communications between Terminator and Decider are initiated by the Terminator. A
1834 Terminator is usually an application element.

1835 A request to confirm is made by sending CONFIRM_TRANSACTION to the target Decider. If
1836 the Decider is a Cohesion Composer, the Terminator may select which of the Composer's
1837 Inferiors are to be included in the confirm-set. If the Decider is an Atom Coordinator, all Inferiors
1838 are included. After applying the decision, the Decider replies with
1839 TRANSACTION_CONFIRMED, TRANSACTION_CANCELLED or (in the case of problems)
1840 INFERIOR_STATUSES.

1841 A Terminator may ask a Composer (but not a Coordinator) to prepare some or all of its Inferiors
1842 with PREPARE_INFERIORS. The Composer replies with INFERIOR_STATUSES.

1843 A Terminator may send CANCEL_TRANSACTION to instruct the Decider to cancel the whole
1844 business transaction., The Decider replies with CANCEL_COMPLETE if all Inferiors cancel
1845 successfully, and with INFERIOR_STATUSES in the case of problems.. If the Decider is a
1846 Cohesion Composer, the Terminator may send CANCEL_INFERIORS to cancel some of the
1847 Inferiors; the Decider always replies with INFERIOR_STATUSES.

1848 A Terminator may check the status of the Inferiors of the Decider by sending
1849 REQUEST_INFERIOR_STATUSES. The Decider replies with INFERIOR_STATUSES.

Terminator sends	Terminator receives
CONFIRM_TRANSACTION	TRANSACTION_CONFIRMED TRANSACTION_CANCELLED INFERIOR_STATUSES
CANCEL_TRANSACTION	TRANSACTION_CANCELLED INFERIOR_STATUSES
PREPARE_INFERIORS	INFERIOR_STATUSES
CANCEL_INFERIORS	INFERIOR_STATUSES
REQUEST_INFERIOR_STATUSES	INFERIOR_STATUSES

1850 Initiator

1851 Requests a **Factory** to create a Superior – this will either be a Decider (representing a new top-
1852 level business transaction) or a sub-coordinator or sub-composer to be the Inferior of an existing
1853 business transaction.

Initiator sends	Initiator receives
BEGIN	BEGUN & CONTEXT
BEGIN & CONTEXT	BEGUN & CONTEXT

1854

1855 The received CONTEXT is that for the new Superior.

1856 **Factory**

1857 Creates Superiors and returns the CONTEXT for the new Superior. The following types of
1858 Superior are created :

1859 Decider, which is either
1860 Composer or
1861 Coordinator
1862 Sub-composer
1863 Sub-coordinator
1864

Factory receives	Factory sends
BEGIN	BEGUN & CONTEXT
BEGIN & CONTEXT	BEGUN & CONTEXT

1865

1866 If the BEGIN has no related CONTEXT, the Factory creates a Decider, either a Cohesion
1867 Composer or an Atom Coordinator, as determined by the “superior type” parameter on the
1868 BEGIN.

1869 If the BEGIN has a related CONTEXT, the new Superior is also enrolled as an Inferior of the
1870 Superior identified by the CONTEXT. The new Superior is thus a sub-composer or sub-
1871 coordinator, as determined by the “superior type” parameter on the BEGIN.

1872 **Other roles**

1873 **Redirector**

1874 Sends a REDIRECT message to inform a Superior or Inferior that an address previously supplied
1875 for the peer (i.e. an Inferior or Superior, respectively) is no longer appropriate, and to supply a
1876 new address or set of addresses to replace the old one.

1877 A Redirector may send a REDIRECT message in response to receiving a message using the old
1878 address, or may send REDIRECT at its own initiative.

1879 If a Superior moves from the superior-address in its CONTEXT, or an Inferior moves from the
1880 inferior-address in the ENROL message, the implementation **must** ensure that a Redirector
1881 catches any inbound messages using the old address and replies with a REDIRECT message
1882 giving the new address. (Note that the inbound message may itself be a REDIRECT message, in

1883 which case the Redirector shall use the new address in the received message as the target for the
1884 REDIRECT that it sends.)

1885 After receiving a REDIRECT message, the BTP actor **must** use the new address not the old one,
1886 unless failure prevents it updating its information.

Redirector receives	Redirector sends
Any message for Superior or Inferior	REDIRECT

1887 **Status Requestor**

1888 Requests and receives the current status of a transaction tree node – any of an Inferior, Superior
1889 or Decider, or the current status of the nodes relationships with its Inferiors, if any. The role of
1890 Status Requestor has no responsibilities – it is just a name for where the REQUEST_STATUS
1891 and REQUEST_INFERIOR_STATUSES comes from (REQUEST_INFERIOR_STATUSES is
1892 also issued by a Terminator to a Decider).

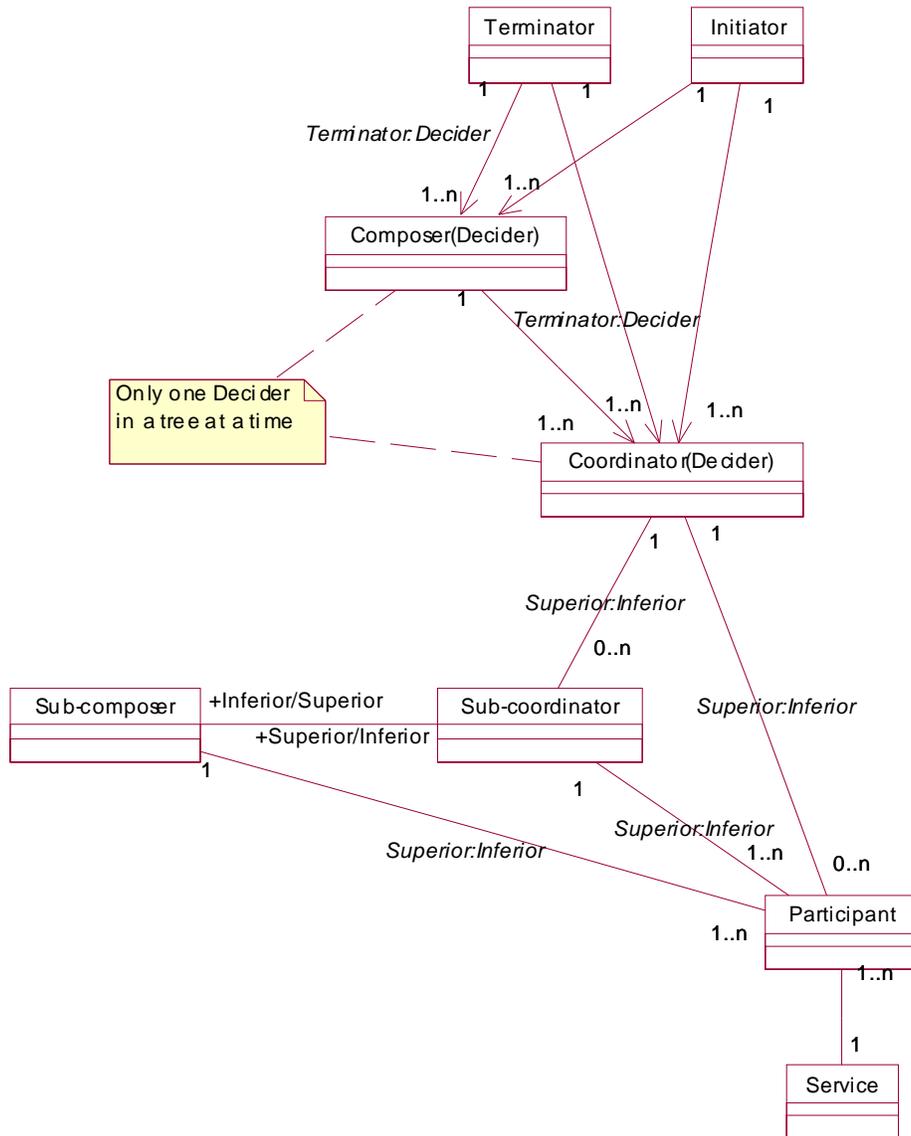
Status Requestor sends	Status Requestor receives
REQUEST_STATUS	STATUS
REQUEST_INFERIOR_STATUS	INFERIOR_STATUSES

1893

1894 The receiver of the request can refuse to provide the status information by replying with
1895 FAULT(StatusRefused). The information returned in STATUS will always relate to the
1896 transaction tree node as a whole (e.g. as an Inferior, even if it is also a Superior).

1897 **Summary of relationships**

1898 Figure 20 summarises the relationships between the BTP roles. BTP can be implemented using
 1899 proprietary equivalents of the Terminator and Decider roles.



1900

1901

Figure 20 Summary of relationships between roles

1902 **Abstract Messages and Associated Contracts**

1903 BT Protocol Messages are defined in this section in terms of the abstract information that has to
1904 be communicated. These abstract messages will be mapped to concrete messages communicated
1905 by a particular carrier protocol (there can be several such mappings defined).

1906 The abstract message set and the associated state table assume the carrier protocol will

- 1907 • deliver messages completely and correctly, or not at all (corrupted messages will not be
1908 delivered);
- 1909 • report some communication failures, but will not necessarily report all (i.e. not all
1910 message deliveries are positively acknowledged within the carrier);
- 1911 • sometimes deliver successive messages in a different order than they were sent; and
- 1912 • does not have built-in mechanisms to link a request and a response

1913 Note that these assumptions would be met by a mapping to SMTP and more than met by
1914 mappings to SOAP/HTTP.

1915 However, when the abstract message set is mapped to a carrier protocol that provides a richer
1916 service (e.g. reports all delivery failures, guarantees ordered delivery or offers a request/response
1917 mechanism), the mapping can take advantage of these features. Typically in such cases, some of
1918 the parameters of an abstract message will be implicit in the carrier mechanisms, while the values
1919 of other parameters will be directly represented in transmitted elements.

1920 The abstract messages include **Delivery parameters** that are concerned with the transmission and
1921 delivery of the messages as well as **Payload parameters** directly concerned with the progression
1922 of the BTP relationships. When bound to a particular carrier protocol and for particular
1923 implementation configurations, parts or all of the Delivery parameters may be implicit in the
1924 carrier protocol and will not appear in the "on-the-wire" representation of the BTP messages as
1925 such. Delivery parameters are defined as being only those parameters that are concerned with the
1926 transmission of this message, or of an immediate reply (thus address parameters to be used in
1927 repeated later messages and the identifiers of both sender and receiver are Payload parameters). In
1928 the tables in this section, Delivery parameters are shown in shaded cells.

1929 **Addresses**

1930 All of the messages except CONTEXT have a "target address" parameter and many also have
1931 other address parameters. These latter identify the desired target of other messages in the set. In
1932 all cases, the exact value will have been originally determined by the implementation that is the
1933 target or intended target.

1934 The detailed format of the address will depend on the particular carrier protocol, but at this
1935 abstract level is considered to have three parts. The first part, the "binding name", identifies the
1936 binding to a particular carrier protocol – some bindings are specified in this document, others can
1937 be specified elsewhere. The second part of the address, the "binding address", is meaningful to
1938 the carrier protocol itself, which will use it for the communication (i.e. it will permit a message to

1939 be delivered to a receiver). The third part, “additional information”, is not used or understood by
1940 the carrier protocol. The “additional information” may be a structured value.

1941 When a message is actually transmitted, the “binding name” of the target address will identify
1942 which carrier protocol is in use and the “binding address” will identify the destination, as known
1943 to the carrier protocol. The entire binding address is considered to be “consumed” by the carrier
1944 protocol implementation. All of it may be used by the sending implementation, or some of it may
1945 be transmitted in headers, or as part of a URL in the carrier protocol, but then used or consumed
1946 by the receiving implementation of the carrier protocol to direct the BTP message to a BTP-aware
1947 entity (BTP-aware in that it is capable of interpreting the BTP messages). The “additional
1948 information” of the target address will be part of the BTP message itself and used in some way by
1949 the receiving BTP-aware entity (it could be used to route the message on to some other BTP
1950 entity). Thus, for the target address, only the “additional information” field is transmitted in the
1951 BTP message and the “additional information” is opaque to parties other than the recipient.

1952 For other addresses in BTP messages, all three components will be within the message.

1953 All messages that concern a particular Superior:Inferior relationship have an identifier parameter
1954 for the target side as well as the target address. This allows full flexibility for implementation
1955 choices – an implementation can:

1956 a) Use the same binding address and additional information for multiple business
1957 transactions, using the identifier parameter to locate the relevant state
1958 information;

1959 b) Use the same binding address for multiple business transactions and use the
1960 additional information to locate the information; or

1961 c) Use a different binding address for each business transaction.

1962 Which of these choices is used is opaque to the entity sending the message – both parts of the
1963 address and the identifier originated at the recipient of this message (and were transmitted as
1964 parameters of earlier messages in the opposite direction).

1965 BTP recovery requires that the state information for a Superior or Inferior is accessible after
1966 failure and that the peer can distinguish between temporary inaccessibility and the permanent
1967 non-existence of the state information. As is explained in “Redirection” [Below in the conceptual](#)
1968 [model](#), BTP provides mechanisms – having a set of BTP addresses for some parameters, and the
1969 REDIRECT message – that make this possible, even if the recovered state information is on a
1970 different address to the original one (as may be the case if case c) above is used).

1971 **Request/response pairs**

1972 Many of the messages combine in pairs as a request and its response. However, in some cases the
1973 response message is sent without a triggering request, or as a possible response to more than one
1974 type of request. To allow for this, the abstract message set treats each message as standalone; but
1975 where a request does expect a reply, a “reply-address” parameter will be present. For any
1976 message with a reply address parameter, in the case of certain errors, a FAULT message will be
1977 sent to the reply address instead of the expected reply.

1978 Between Superior and Inferior the address of the peer is normally known (from the “superior-
1979 address” on an earlier CONTEXT or the “inferior-address” on a received ENROL). However, in
1980 some cases a message will be received for a Superior or Inferior that is not known – the state
1981 information no longer exists. This is not an exceptional condition but occurs when one side has
1982 either not created or has removed its persistent state in accordance with the procedures, but a
1983 message has got lost in a failure, and the peer still has state information. The response to a
1984 message for an unknown (and logically non-existent) Superior is SUPERIOR_STATE/unknown,
1985 for an unknown Inferior it is INFERIOR_STATE/unknown. However, since the intended target is
1986 unknown, there is no information to locate the peer, which sent the undeliverable message. To
1987 enable the receiver to reply with the appropriate *_STATE/unknown, all the messages between
1988 Superior and Inferior have a “senders-address” parameter. If a FAULT message is to be sent in
1989 response to message which (as an abstract message) has a “senders-address” parameter, the
1990 FAULT message is sent to that address.

1991 *Note – Both reply-address and senders-address may be absent when the carrier protocol*
1992 *itself has a request/response pattern. In these cases, the reply or sender address is*
1993 *implicitly that of the sender of the request (and thus the destination of a response)*

1994 **Compounding messages**

1995 BTP messages may be sent in combination with each other, or with other (application) messages.
1996 There are two cases:

- 1997 a) Sending the messages together where the combination has semantic
1998 significance. One message is said to be “related to” the other – the combination
1999 is termed a “group”.
- 2000 b) Sending of the messages where the combination has no semantic significance,
2001 but is merely a convenience or optimisation. This is termed “bundling” – the
2002 combination is termed a “bundle”.

2003 The form A&B is used to refer to a combination (group) where message B is sent in relation to A
2004 (“relation” is asymmetric). The form A+B is used to refer to A and B bundled together- the
2005 transmission of the bundle "A+B" is semantically identical to the transmission of A followed by
2006 the transmission of B.

2007 Only certain combinations of messages are possible in a group, and the meaning of the relation is
2008 specifically defined for each such combination in the next section. A particular group is treated as
2009 a unit for transmission – it has a single target address. This is usually that of one of the messages
2010 in the group – the specification for the group defines which.

2011 A “bundle” of messages may contain both unrelated messages and groups of related messages.
2012 The only constraint on which messages and groups can be bundled is that all have the same
2013 binding address, but may have different “additional information” values. (Messages within a
2014 related group may have different addresses, where the rules of their relatedness permit this).
2015 Unless constrained by the binding, any messages or groups that are to be sent to the same binding
2016 address may be bundled – the fact that the binding addresses are the same is a necessary and
2017 sufficient condition for the sender to determine that the messages can be bundled.

2018 A particular and important case of related messages is where a BTP CONTEXT message is sent
2019 related to an application message. In this case, the target of the application message defines the
2020 destination of the CONTEXT message. The receiving implementation may in fact remove the
2021 CONTEXT before delivering the application message to the application (Service) proper, but
2022 from the perspective of the sender, the two are sent to the same place.

2023 The compounding mechanisms, and the multi-part address structures, support the “one-wire” and
2024 “one-shot” communication patterns.

2025 In “one-wire”, all message exchanges between two sides of a Superior:Inferior relationship,
2026 including the associated application messages, pass via the same “endpoints”. These “endpoints”
2027 may in fact be relays, routing messages on to particular actors within their domain. The onward
2028 routing will require some further addressing, but this has to be opaque to the sender. This can be
2029 achieved if the relaying endpoint ensures that all addresses for actors in its domain have the
2030 relay’s address as their binding address, and any routing information it will need in its own
2031 domain is placed in the additional information. (This may involve the relay changing addresses in
2032 messages as they pass through it on the way out). On receiving a message, it determines the
2033 within-domain destination from the received additional information (which is thus rewritten) and
2034 forwards the message appropriately. The sender is unaware of this, and merely sees addresses
2035 with the same binding address, which it is permitted to bundle. The content of the “additional
2036 information” is a matter only for the relay – it could put an entire BTP address in there, or other
2037 implementation-defined information. Note that a quite different one-wire implementation can be
2038 constructed where there is no relaying, but the receiving entity effectively performs all roles,
2039 using the received identifiers to locate the appropriate state.

2040 “One-shot” communication makes it possible to send an application message, receive the
2041 application reply, enrol an Inferior to be responsible for the confirm/cancel of the operations of
2042 those message and inform the Superior that the Inferior is prepared, all in one two-way exchange
2043 across the network (e.g. one request/reply of a carrier protocol).. The application request is sent
2044 with a related CONTEXT message. The application response is sent with a relation group of
2045 CONTEXT_REPLY/related, ENROL/no-rsp-req message and a PREPARED message. This is
2046 possible even if the Superior address is different from the address of the application element that
2047 sends the original message (if the application exchange is request/reply, there may not even be an
2048 identifiable address for the application element). The target addresses of the ENROL and
2049 PREPARED (the Superior address) are not transmitted; the actor that was originally responsible
2050 for adding the CONTEXT to the outbound application message remembers the Superior address
2051 and forwards the ENROL and PREPARED appropriately.

2052 With “one-shot”, if there are multiple Inferiors created as a result of a single application message,
2053 there is an ENROL and PREPARED message for each sent related to the CONTEXT_REPLY. If
2054 an operation fails, a CANCELLED message is sent instead of a PREPARED.

2055 If the CONTEXT has “superior-type” of “atom”, then subsequent messages to the same Service,
2056 with the same related CONTEXT/atom, can have their associated operations put under the control
2057 of the same Inferior, and only a CONTEXT_REPLY/completed is sent back with the response (if
2058 the new operations fail, it will be necessary to send back CONTEXT_REPLY/repudiated, or send
2059 CANCELLED). If the “superior type” on the CONTEXT is “cohesive”, each operation will
2060 require separate enrolment.

2061 Whether the “one-shot” mechanism is used is determined by the implementation on the
2062 responding (Inferior) side. This may be subject to configuration and may also be constrained by
2063 the application or by the binding in use.

2064 **Extensibility**

2065 To simplify interoperation between implementations of this edition of BTP with implementations
2066 of future editions, the “must-be-understood” sub-parameter as specified for Qualifiers may be
2067 defined for use with any parameter added to an existing message in a future revision of this
2068 specification. The default for “must-be-understood” shall be “true”, so an implementation
2069 receiving an unrecognised parameter without a “false” value for “must-be-understood” shall not
2070 accept it (the FAULT value “UnrecognisedParameter” is available, but other errors, including
2071 lower-layer parsing/unmarshalling errors may be reported instead). If “must-be-understood” with
2072 the value “false” is present as a sub-parameter of a parameter in any message, a receiving
2073 implementation **should** ignore the parameter.

2074 How the sub-parameter is associated with the new parameter is determined by the particular
2075 binding.

2076 No special mechanism is provided to allow for the introduction of completely new messages.

2077 **Messages**

2078 **Qualifiers**

2079 All messages have a Qualifiers parameter which contains zero or more Qualifier values. A
2080 Qualifier has sub-parameters:

Sub-parameter	Type
qualifier name	string
qualifier group	URI
must-be-understood	Boolean
to-be-propagated	Boolean
content	Arbitrary – depends on type

2081

2082 **Qualifier group** ensures the Qualifier name is unambiguous. Qualifiers in the same group
2083 need not have any functional relationship. The qualifier group will typically be used to
2084 identify the specification that defines the qualifier’s meaning and use. Qualifiers may
2085 be defined in this or other standard specifications, in specifications of a particular
2086 community of users or of implementations or by bilateral agreement.

2087 **Qualifier name** this identifies the meaning and use of the Qualifier, using a name that is
2088 unambiguous within the scope of the Qualifier group.

2089 **Must-be-understood** if this has the value “true” and the receiving entity does not
2090 recognise the Qualifier type (or does not implement the necessary functionality), a
2091 FAULT “UnsupportedQualifier” shall be returned and the message shall not be
2092 processed. Default is “true”.

2093 **To-be-propagated** if this has the value “true” and the receiving entity passes the BTP
2094 message (which may be a CONTEXT, but can be other messages) onwards to other
2095 entities, the same Qualifier value shall be included. If the value is “false”, the Qualifier
2096 shall not be automatically included if the BTP message is passed onwards. (If the
2097 receiving entity does support the qualifier type, it is possible a propagated message
2098 may contain another instance of the same type, even with the same Content – this is
2099 not considered propagation of the original qualifier.). Default is “false”.

2100 **Content** the type (which may be structured) and meaning of the content is defined by the
2101 specification of the Qualifier.

2102 **Messages not restricted to outcome or control relationships.**

2103 The messages in this section are used between various roles. CONTEXT message is used in the
2104 Initiator:Factory relationship (when it is related to BEGIN or to BEGUN), and related to an
2105 application ‘message’ to propagate the business transaction between parts of the
2106 application. CONTEXT_REPLY is used as the reply to a CONTEXT.REQUEST_STATUS can
2107 be issued to, and STATUS returned by any of Decider, Superior or Inferior. FAULT can be used
2108 on any relationship to indicate an error condition back to the sender of a message.

2109 **CONTEXT**

2110 A CONTEXT is supplied by (or on behalf of) a Superior and related to one or more application
2111 messages. (The means by which this relationship is represented is determined by the binding and
2112 the binding mechanisms of the application protocol.) The “superior-type” parameter identifies
2113 whether the Superior will apply the same decision to all Inferiors enrolled using the same superior
2114 identifier (“superior-type” is “atom”) or whether it may apply different decisions (“superior-type”
2115 is “cohesion”).

Parameter	Type
superior-address	Set of BTP addresses
superior-identifier	Identifier
superior-type	cohesion/atom
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
reply-address	BTP address

2116

2117 **superior-address** the address to which ENROL and other messages from an enrolled
2118 Inferior are to be sent. This can be a set of alternative addresses.

2119 **superior-identifier** identifies the Superior. This shall be globally unambiguous.

2120 **superior-type** identifies whether the CONTEXT refers to a Cohesion or an Atom. Default
2121 is atom.

2122 **qualifiers** standardised or other qualifiers. The standard qualifier “Transaction timelimit”
2123 is carried by CONTEXT.

2124 **reply-address** the address to which a replying CONTEXT_REPLY is to be sent. This may
2125 be different each time the CONTEXT is transmitted – it refers to the destination of a
2126 replying CONTEXT_REPLY for this particular transmission of the CONTEXT.

2127 There is no “target-address” parameter for CONTEXT as it is only transmitted in relation to the
2128 application messages, BEGIN and BEGUN.

2129 The forms CONTEXT/cohesion and CONTEXT/atom refer to CONTEXT messages with the
2130 “superior-type” with the appropriate value.

2131 CONTEXT_REPLY

2132 CONTEXT_REPLY is sent after receipt of CONTEXT (related to application message(s)) to
2133 indicate whether all necessary enrolments have already completed (ENROLLED has been
2134 received) or will be completed by ENROL messages sent in relation to the CONTEXT_REPLY
2135 or if an enrolment attempt has failed. CONTEXT_REPLY may be sent related to an application
2136 message (typically the response to the application message related to the CONTEXT). In some
2137 bindings the CONTEXT_REPLY may be implicit in the application message.
2138 CONTEXT_REPLY is used in some of the related groups to allow BTP messages to be sent to a
2139 Superior with an application message.

Parameter	Type
superior-identifier	Identifier
completion-status	complete/related/repudiated
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP address

2140

2141 **superior-identifier** the “superior-identifier” from the CONTEXT

2142 **completion-status:** reports whether all enrol operations made necessary by the receipt of
2143 the earlier CONTEXT message have completed. Values are

Value	meaning
<i>completed</i>	All enrolments (if any) have succeeded already
<i>incomplete</i>	Further enrolments are possible (used only in related groups with other BTP messages)
<i>related</i>	At least some enrolments are to be

Value	meaning
	performed by ENROL messages related to the CONTEXT_REPLY. All other enrolments (if any) have succeeded already.
<i>repudiated</i>	At least one enrolment has failed. The implications of receiving the CONTEXT have not been honoured.

2144

2145 **qualifiers** standardised or other qualifiers.

2146 **target-address** the address to which the CONTEXT_REPLY is sent. This shall be the
2147 “reply-address” from the CONTEXT.

2148 The form CONTEXT_REPLY/completed, CONTEXT_REPLY/related and
2149 CONTEXT_REPLY/repudiated refer to CONTEXT_REPLY messages with status having the
2150 appropriate value. The form CONTEXT_REPLY/ok refers to either of
2151 CONTEXT_REPLY/completed or CONTEXT_REPLY/related.

2152 If there are no necessary enrolments (e.g. the application messages related to the received
2153 CONTEXT did not require the enrolment of any Inferiors), then CONTEXT_REPLY/completed
2154 is used.

2155 If a CONTEXT_REPLY/repudiated is received, the receiving implementation **must** ensure that
2156 the business transaction will not be confirmed.

2157 REQUEST_STATUS

2158 Sent to an Inferior, Superior or to a Decider to ask it to reply with STATUS. The receiver may
2159 reject the request with a FAULT(StatusRefused).

Parameter	Type
target-identifier	Identifier
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP address
reply-address	BTP address

2160

2161 **target identifier** The identifier for the business transaction, or part of business transaction
2162 whose status is sought. If the target-address is a “decider-address”, this parameter shall
2163 be the “transaction-identifier” on the BEGUN message. If the “target-address” is an
2164 “inferior-address”, this parameter shall be the “inferior-identifier” on the ENROL
2165 message. If the “target-address” is a “superior-address”, this parameter shall be the
2166 “superior-identifier” on the CONTEXT.

2167 **qualifiers** standardised or other qualifiers.

2168 **target-address** the address to which the REQUEST_STATUS message is sent. This can
 2169 be any of “decider-address”, “inferior-address” or “superior-address”.

2170 **reply-address** the address to which the replying STATUS should be sent.

2171 Types of FAULT possible (sent to “reply-address”)

2172 **General**

2173 **Redirect** – if the intended target now has a different address

2174 **StatusRefused** – if the receiver is not prepared to report its status to the sender of this
 2175 message

2176 **UnknownTransaction** – if the target-identifier is unknown

2177 **STATUS**

2178 Sent by a Inferior, Superior or Decider in reply to a REQUEST_STATUS, reporting the overall
 2179 state of the transaction tree node represented by the sender.

Parameter	Type
responders-identifier	Identifier
status	See below
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP address

2180

2181 **responders-identifier** the identifier of the state, identical to the “target-identifier” on the
 2182 REQUEST_STATUS.

2183 **status** states the current status of the transaction tree node represented by the sender.

2184 Some of the values are only issued if the sender is an Inferior. If the transaction tree
 2185 node is both Superior and Inferior (i.e. is a sub-coordinator or sub-composer), and two
 2186 status values would be valid for the current state, it is the sender’s option which one is
 2187 used.

status value	Meaning from Superior	Meaning from Inferior
<i>Created</i>	Not applicable	The Inferior exists (and is addressable) but it has not been enrolled with a Superior
<i>Enrolling</i>	Not applicable	ENROL has been sent, but ENROLLED is awaited

status value	Meaning from Superior	Meaning from Inferior
<i>Active</i>	New enrolment of inferiors is possible	The Inferior is enrolled
<i>Resigning</i>	Not applicable	RESIGN has been sent; RESIGNED is awaited
<i>Resigned</i>	Not applicable	RESIGNED has been received
<i>Preparing</i>	Not applicable	PREPARE has been received; PREPARED has not been sent
<i>Prepared</i>	Not applicable	PREPARED has been sent; no outcome has been received or autonomous decision made
<i>Confirming</i>	Confirm decision has been made or CONFIRM has been received as Inferior but responses from inferiors are pending	CONFIRM has been received; CONFIRMED/response has not been sent
<i>Confirmed</i>	CONFIRMED/responses have been received from all Inferiors	CONFIRMED/response has been sent
<i>Cancelling</i>	Cancel decision has been made but responses from inferiors are pending	CANCEL has been received or auto-cancel has been decided
<i>Cancelled</i>	CANCELLED has been received from all Inferiors	CANCELLED has been sent
<i>cancel-contradiction</i>	Not applicable	Autonomous cancel decision was made, CONFIRM received; CONTRADICTION has not been received
<i>confirm-contradiction</i>	Not applicable	Autonomous confirm decision was made, CANCEL received; CONTRADICTION has not been received
<i>Hazard</i>	A hazard has been reported from at least one Inferior	A hazard has been discovered; CONTRADICTION has not been received
<i>Contradicted</i>	Not applicable	CONTRADICTION has been received
<i>Unknown</i>	No state information for the target-identifier exists	No state information for the target-identifier exists
<i>Inaccessible</i>	There may be state information for this target-identifier but it cannot be reached/existence cannot be determined	There may be state information for this target-identifier but it cannot be reached/existence cannot be determined

2189 **qualifiers** standardised or other qualifiers.
 2190 **target-address** the address to which the STATUS is sent. This will be the “reply-address”
 2191 on the REQUEST_STATUS message

2192 Types of FAULT possible

2193 *General*

2194 **FAULT**

2195 Sent in reply to various messages to report an error condition . The FAULT message is used on
 2196 all the relationships as a general negative reply to a message.

Parameter	Type
superior-identifier	Identifier
inferior-identifier	Identifier
fault-type	See below
fault-data	See below
fault-text	Text string
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP address

2197

2198 **superior-identifier** the “superior-identifier” as on the CONTEXT message and as used on
 2199 the ENROL message (present only if the FAULT is sent to the superior).

2200 **inferior-identifier** the “inferior-identifier” as on the ENROL message (present only if the
 2201 FAULT is sent to the inferior)

2202 **fault-type** identifies the nature of the error, as specified for each of the main messages.

2203 **fault-data** information relevant to the particular error. Each “fault-type” defines the
 2204 content of the “fault-data”:

fault-type	meaning	fault-data
<i>CommunicationFailure</i>	Any fault arising from the carrier mechanism and communication infrastructure.	Determined by the carrier mechanism and binding specification
<i>DuplicateInferior</i>	An inferior with the same address and identifier is already enrolled with this Superior	The identifier
<i>General</i>	Any otherwise unspecified problem	None
<i>InvalidDecider</i>	The address the message was sent to is not valid (at all or for this Terminator and transaction identifier)	The address
<i>InvalidInferior</i>	The "inferior-identifier" in the message or at least one "inferior-identifier"s in an "inferior-list" parameter is not known or does not identify a known Inferior	One or more invalid identifiers
<i>InvalidSuperior</i>	The received identifier is not known or does not identify a known Superior	The identifier
<i>StatusRefused</i>	The receiver will not report the requested status (or inferior statuses) to this StatusRequestor	None
<i>InvalidTerminator</i>	The address the message was sent to is not valid (at all or for this Decider and transaction identifier)	The address
<i>UnknownParameter</i>	A BTP message has been received with an unrecognised parameter	None
<i>UnknownTransaction</i>	The transaction-identifier is unknown	The transaction-identifier
<i>UnsupportedQualifier</i>	A qualifier has been received that is not recognised and on which "must-be-Understood" is "true".	Qualifier group and name
<i>WrongState</i>	The message has arrived when the recipient or the transaction identified by a related CONTEXT is in an invalid state.	None
<i>Redirect</i>	The target of the BTP message now has a different address	Set of BTP addresses, to be used instead of the address the BTP message was received on

2205

2206 **fault-text** Free text describing the fault or providing more information. Whether this
2207 parameter is present, and exactly what it contains are an implementation option.

2208 **qualifiers** standardised or other qualifiers.

2209 **target-address** the address to which the FAULT is sent. This may be the “reply-address”
2210 from a received message or the address of the opposite side (superior/inferior) as given
2211 in a CONTEXT or ENROL message

2212 *Note – If the carrier mechanism used for the transmission of BTP messages is capable of*
2213 *delivering messages in a different order than they were sent in, the “WrongState”*
2214 *FAULT is not sent and should be ignored if received.*

2215 **REQUEST_INFERIOR_STATUSES, INFERIOR_STATUSES**

2216 REQUEST_INFERIOR_STATUSES may be sent to and INFERIOR_STATUSES sent from any
2217 Decider, Superior or Inferior, asking it to report on the status of its relationships with Inferiors (if
2218 any). Since Deciders are required to respond to REQUEST_INFERIOR_STATUSES with
2219 INFERIOR_STATUSES but non-Deciders may just issue FAULT(StatusRefused), and
2220 INFERIOR_STATUSES is also used as a reply to other messages from Terminator to Decider,
2221 these messages are described below under the messages used in the control relationships.

2222 **Messages used in the outcome relationships**

2223 **ENROL**

2224 A request to a Superior to ENROL an Inferior. This is typically issued after receipt of a
2225 CONTEXT message in relation to an application request.

2226 The actor issuing ENROL plays the role of Enroller.

Parameter	type
superior-identifier	Identifier
response-requested	Boolean
inferior-address	Set of BTP addresses
inferior-identifier	Identifier
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP address
reply-address	BTP address

2227

2228 **superior-identifier.** The “superior-identifier” as on the CONTEXT message

2229 **response- requested** true if an ENROLLED response is required, false otherwise. Default
2230 is false.

2231 **inferior-address** the address to which PREPARE, CONFIRM, CANCEL and
2232 SUPERIOR_STATE messages for this Inferior are to be sent.

2233 **inferior-identifier** an identifier that identifies this Inferior. This shall be globally
2234 unambiguous..

2235 **qualifiers** standardised or other qualifiers. The standard qualifier “Inferior name” may be
2236 present.

2237 **target-address** the address to which the ENROL is sent. This will be the “superior-
2238 address” from the CONTEXT message.

2239 **reply-address** the address to which a replying ENROLLED is to be sent, if “response-
2240 requested” is true. If this field is absent and “response-requested” is true, the
2241 ENROLLED should be sent to the “inferior-address” (or one of them, at sender’s
2242 option)

2243 Types of FAULT possible (sent to “reply-address”)

2244 **General**

2245 **InvalidSuperior** – if “superior-identifier” is unknown

2246 **Redirect** – if the Superior now has a different superior-address

2247 **DuplicateInferior** – if inferior with at least one of the set “inferior-address” the same and
2248 the same “inferior-identifier” is already enrolled

2249 **WrongState** – if it is too late to enrol new Inferiors (generally if the Superior has already
2250 sent a PREPARED message to its superior or terminator, or if it has already issued
2251 CONFIRM to other Inferiors).

2252 The form ENROL/rsp-req refers to an ENROL message with “response-requested” having the
2253 value “true”; ENROL/no-rsp-req refers to an ENROL message with “response-requested” having
2254 the value “false”

2255 ENROL/no-rsp-req is typically sent in relation to CONTEXT_REPLY/related. ENROL/rsp-req is
2256 typically when CONTEXT_REPLY/completed will be used (after the ENROLLED message has
2257 been received.)

2258 **ENROLLED**

2259 Sent from Superior in reply to an ENROL/rsp-req message, to indicate the Inferior has been
2260 successfully enrolled (and will therefore be included in the termination exchanges)

Parameter	Type
inferior-identifier	Identifier
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP address
sender-address	BTP address

2261

2262 **inferior-identifier** The “inferior-identifier” as on the ENROL message

2263 **qualifiers** standardised or other qualifiers.

2264 **target-address** the address to which the ENROLLED is sent. This will be the “reply-
 2265 address” from the ENROL message (or one of the “inferior-address”s if the “reply-
 2266 address” was empty)

2267 **sender-address** the address from which the ENROLLED is sent. This is an address of the
 2268 Superior.

2269 No FAULT messages are issued on receiving ENROLLED.

2270 **RESIGN**

2271 Sent from an enrolled Inferior to the Superior to remove the Inferior from the enrolment. This can
 2272 only be sent if the operations of the business transaction have had no effect as perceived by the
 2273 Inferior.

2274 RESIGN may be sent at any time prior to the sending of a PREPARED or CANCELLED
 2275 message (which cannot then be sent). RESIGN may be sent in response to a PREPARE message.

Parameter	type
superior-identifier	identifier
inferior-identifier	identifier
response-requested	Boolean
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP address
sender-address	BTP address

2276

2277 **superior-identifier** The “superior-identifier” as on the ENROL message

2278 **inferior-identifier** The “inferior-identifier” as on the earlier ENROL message

2279 **response-requested** is set to “true” if a RESIGNED response is required. Default is
 2280 “false”.

2281 **qualifiers** standardised or other qualifiers.

2282 **target-address** the address to which the RESIGN is sent. This will be the superior address
 2283 as used on the ENROL message.

2284 **sender-address** the address from which the RESIGN is sent. This is an address of the
 2285 Inferior.

2286 *Note -- RESIGN is equivalent to readonly vote in some other protocols, but can be issued*
 2287 *early.*

2288 Types of FAULT possible (sent to “sender-address”)

2289 **General**

2290 **InvalidSuperior** – if “superior-identifier” is unknown

2291 **InvalidInferior** – if no ENROL had been received for this “inferior-identifier”inferior-

2292 **WrongState** – if a PREPARED or CANCELLED has already been received by the
2293 Superior from this Inferior

2294 The form RESIGN/rsp-req refers to an RESIGN message with “response-requested” having the
2295 value “true”; RESIGN /no-rsp-req refers to an RESIGN message with “response-requested”
2296 having the value “false”

2297 **RESIGNED**

2298 Sent in reply to a RESIGN/rsp-req message.

Parameter	Type
inferior-identifier	Identifier
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP address
sender-address	BTP address

2299

2300 **inferior-identifier** The “inferior-identifier” as on the earlier ENROL message for this
2301 Inferior.

2302 **qualifiers** standardised or other qualifiers.

2303 **target-address** the address to which the RESIGNED is sent. This will be the “inferior-
2304 address” from the ENROL message.

2305 **sender-address** the address from which the RESIGNED is sent. This is an address of the
2306 Superior.

2307 After receiving this message the Inferior will not receive any more messages with this “inferior-
2308 identifier”.

2309 Types of FAULT possible (sent to “sender-address”)

2310 **General**

2311 **WrongState** - if RESIGN has not been sent

2312 **PREPARE**

2313 Sent from Superior to an Inferior from whom ENROL but neither CANCELLED nor RESIGN
2314 have been received, requesting a PREPARED message. PREPARE can be sent after receiving a
2315 PREPARED message.

Parameter	Type
inferior-identifier	Identifier
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP address
sender-address	BTP address

2316

2317 **inferior-identifier** the “inferior-identifier” as on the earlier ENROL message.

2318 **qualifiers** standardised or other qualifiers. The standard qualifier “Minimum inferior
2319 timeout” is carried by PREPARE.

2320 **target-address** the address to which the PREPARE message is sent. This will be the
2321 “inferior-address” from the ENROL message.

2322 **sender-address** the address from which the PREPARE is sent. This is an address of the
2323 Superior.

2324 On receiving PREPARE, an Inferior **should** reply with a PREPARED, CANCELLED or
2325 RESIGN.

2326 Types of FAULT possible (sent to “sender-address”)

2327 **General**

2328 **InvalidInferior** – if “inferior-identifier” is unknown

2329 **WrongState** – if a CONFIRM or CANCEL has already been received by this Inferior.

2330 **PREPARED**

2331 Sent from Inferior to Superior, either unsolicited or in response to PREPARE, but only when the
2332 Inferior has determined the operations associated with the Inferior can be confirmed and can be
2333 cancelled, as may be instructed by the Superior. The level of isolation is a local matter (i.e. it is
2334 the Inferiors choice, as constrained by the shared understanding of the application exchanges) –
2335 other access may be blocked, may see applied results of operations or may see the original state.

Parameter	Type
superior-identifier	Identifier

Parameter	Type
inferior-identifier	Identifier
default-is cancel	Boolean
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP address
sender-address	BTP address

2336

2337

superior-identifier the “superior-identifier” as on the ENROL message

2338

inferior-identifier The “inferior-identifier” as on the ENROL message

2339

default-is cancel if “true”, the Inferior states that if the outcome at the Superior is to cancel the operations associated with this Inferior, no further messages need be sent to the Inferior. If the Inferior does not receive a CONFIRM message, it will cancel the associated operations. The value “true” will invariably be used with a qualifier indicating under what circumstances (usually a timeout) an autonomous decision to cancel will be made. If “false”, the Inferior will expect a CONFIRM or CANCEL message as appropriate, even if qualifiers indicate that an autonomous decision will be made.

2340

2341

2342

2343

2344

2345

2346

2347

qualifiers standardised or other qualifiers. The standard qualifier “Inferior timeout” may be carried by PREPARED.

2348

2349

target-address the address to which the PREPARED is sent. This will be the Superior address as on the ENROL message.

2350

2351

sender-address the address from which the PREPARED is sent. This is an address of the Inferior.

2352

2353

On sending a PREPARED, the Inferior undertakes to maintain its ability to confirm or cancel the effects of the associated operations until it receives a CONFIRM or CANCEL message.

2354

2355

Qualifiers may define a time limit or other constraints on this promise. The “default-is cancel” parameter affects only the subsequent message exchanges and does not of itself state that cancellation will occur.

2356

2357

2358

Types of FAULT possible (sent to “sender-address”)

2359

General

2360

InvalidSuperior – if “superior-identifier” is unknown

2361

InvalidInferior – if no ENROL has been received for this “inferior-identifier”, or if RESIGN has been received from this Inferior

2362

2363 The form PREPARED/cancel refers to a PREPARED message with “default-is cancel” = “true”.
2364 The unqualified form PREPARED refers to a PREPARED message with “default-is cancel” =
2365 “false”.

2366 **CONFIRM**

2367 Sent by the Superior to an Inferior from whom PREPARED has been received.

Parameter	Type
inferior-identifier	Identifier
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP address
sender-address	BTP address

2368

2369 **inferior-identifier** The “inferior-identifier” as on the earlier ENROL message for this
2370 Inferior.

2371 **qualifiers** standardised or other qualifiers.

2372 **target-address** the address to which the CONFIRM message is sent. This will be the
2373 “inferior-address” from the ENROL message.

2374 **sender-address** the address from which the CONFIRM is sent. This is an address of the
2375 Superior.

2376 On receiving CONFIRM, the Inferior is released from its promise to be able to undo the
2377 operations of associated with the Inferior. The effects of the operations can be made available to
2378 everyone (if they weren’t already).

2379 Types of FAULT possible (sent to “sender-address”)

2380 **General**

2381 **InvalidInferior** – if “inferior-identifier” is unknown

2382 **WrongState** – if no PREPARED has been sent by, or if CANCEL has been received by
2383 this Inferior.

2384 **CONFIRMED**

2385 Sent after the Inferior has applied the confirmation, both in reply to CONFIRM or when the
2386 Inferior has made an autonomous confirm decision, and in reply to a CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE if
2387 the Inferior decides to confirm its associated operations.

Parameter	Type
superior-identifier	Identifier
inferior-identifier	Identifier
confirm-received	Boolean
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP address
sender-address	BTP address

2388

2389 **superior-identifier** the “superior-identifier” as on the CONTEXT message.

2390 **inferior-identifier** the “inferior-identifier” as on the earlier ENROL message.

2391 **confirm-received** “true” if CONFIRMED is sent after receiving a CONFIRM message;
 2392 “false” if an autonomous confirm decision has been made and either if no CONFIRM
 2393 message has been received or the implementation cannot determine if CONFIRM has
 2394 been received (due to loss of state information in a failure).

2395 **qualifiers** standardised or other qualifiers.

2396 **target-address** the address to which the CONFIRMED is sent. This will be the Superior
 2397 address as on the CONTEXT message.

2398 **sender-address** the address from which the CONFIRMED is sent. This is an address of
 2399 the Inferior.

2400 Types of FAULT possible (sent to “sender-address”)

2401 *General*

2402 *InvalidSuperior* – if “superior-identifier” is unknown

2403 *InvalidInferior* – if no ENROL has been received for this “inferior-identifier”, or if
 2404 RESIGN has been received from this Inferior.

2405 *Note – A CONFIRMED message arriving before a CONFIRM message is sent, or after a*
 2406 *CANCEL has been sent will occur when the Inferior has taken an autonomous*
 2407 *decision and is not regarded as occurring in the wrong state. (The latter will cause a*
 2408 *CONTRADICTION message to be sent.)*

2409 The form CONFIRMED/auto refers to a CONFIRMED message with “confirm-received” =
 2410 “false”; CONFIRMED/response refers to a CONFIRMED message with “confirm-received” =
 2411 “true”.

2412 **CANCEL**

2413 Sent by the Superior to an Inferior at any time before (and unless) CONFIRM has been sent.

Parameter	Type
inferior-identifier	Identifier
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP address
sender-address	BTP address

2414

2415 **inferior-identifier** the “inferior-identifier” as on the earlier ENROL message.

2416 **qualifiers** standardised or other qualifiers.

2417 **target-address** the address to which the CANCEL message is sent. This will be the
2418 “inferior-address” from the ENROL message.

2419 **sender-address** the address from which the CANCEL is sent. This is an address of the
2420 Superior.

2421 When received by an Inferior, the effects of any operations associated with the Inferior should be
2422 undone. If the Inferior had sent PREPARED, the Inferior is released from its promise to be able to
2423 confirm the operations.

2424 Types of FAULT possible (sent to “sender-address”)

2425 *General*

2426 *InvalidInferior* – if “inferior-identifier” is unknown

2427 *WrongState* – if a CONFIRM has been received by this Inferior.

2428 **CANCELLED**

2429 Sent when the Inferior has applied (or is applying) cancellation of the operations associated with
2430 the Inferior. CANCELLED is sent from Inferior to Superior in the following cases:

- 2431 1. before (and instead of) sending PREPARED, to indicate the Inferior is unable to
2432 apply the operations in full and is cancelling all of them;
- 2433 2. in reply to CANCEL, regardless of whether PREPARED has been sent;
- 2434 3. after sending PREPARED and then making and applying an autonomous
2435 decision to cancel.
- 2436 4. in reply to CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE if the Inferior decides to cancel the
2437 associated operations

2438 As is specified in the state tables, cases 1, 2 and 3 are not always distinct in some circumstances
2439 of recovery and resending of messages.

Parameter	Type
superior-identifier	Identifier
inferior-identifier	Identifier
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP address
sender-address	BTP address

2440

2441 **superior-identifier** the “superior-identifier” as on the CONTEXT message.

2442 **inferior-identifier** the inferior identifier as on the earlier ENROL message.

2443 **qualifiers** standardised or other qualifiers.

2444 **target-address** the address to which the CANCELLED is sent. This will be the Superior
2445 address as on the CONTEXT message.

2446 **sender-address** the address from which the CANCELLED is sent. This is an address of
2447 the Inferior.

2448 Types of FAULT possible (sent to “sender-address”)

2449 **General**

2450 **InvalidSuperior** – if “superior-identifier” is unknown

2451 **InvalidInferior** – if no ENROL has been received for this ”inferior-identifier”, or if
2452 RESIGN has been received from this Inferior

2453 **WrongState** – if CONFIRM has been sent

2454 *Note – A CANCELLED message arriving before a CANCEL message is sent, or after a*
2455 *CONFIRM has been sent will occur when the Inferior has taken an autonomous*
2456 *decision and is not regarded as occurring in the wrong state. (The latter will cause a*
2457 *CONTRADICTION message to be sent.)*

2458 **CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE**

2459 Sent from a Superior to an enrolled Inferior, when there is only one such enrolled Inferior. In this
2460 case the two-phase exchange is not performed between the Superior and Inferior and the outcome
2461 decision for the operations associated with the Inferior is determined by the Inferior.

Parameter	Type
inferior-identifier	Identifier
report-hazard	boolean

Parameter	Type
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP address
sender-address	BTP address

2462

2463 **inferior-identifier** The “inferior-identifier” as on the earlier ENROL message for this
 2464 Inferior.

2465 **report hazard** Defines whether the superior wishes to be informed if a mixed condition
 2466 occurs for the operations associated with the Inferior. If “report-hazard” is “true”, the
 2467 Inferior will reply with HAZARD if a mixed condition occurs, or if the Inferior cannot
 2468 determine that a mixed condition has not occurred. If “report-hazard” is false, the
 2469 Inferior will report only its own decision, regardless of whether that decision was
 2470 correctly and consistently applied. Default is false.

2471 **qualifiers** standardised or other qualifiers.

2472 **target-address** the address to which the CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE message is sent This
 2473 will be the “inferior-address” on the ENROL message.

2474 **sender-address** the address from which the CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE is sent. This is an
 2475 address of the Superior.

2476 CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE can be issued by a Superior to an Inferior from whom PREPARED
 2477 has been received (subject to the requirement that there is only one enrolled Inferior).

2478 Types of FAULT possible (sent to “sender-address”)

2479 *General*

2480 *InvalidInferior* – if “inferior-identifier” is unknown

2481 *WrongState* – if a PREPARE has already been sent to this Inferior

2482 **HAZARD**

2483 Sent when the Inferior has either discovered a “mixed” condition: that is unable to correctly and
 2484 consistently cancel or confirm the operations in accord with the decision , or when the Inferior is
 2485 unable to determine that a “mixed” condition has not occurred.

2486 HAZARD is also used to reply to a CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE if the Inferior determines there is a
 2487 mixed condition within its associated operations or is unable to determine that there is not a
 2488 mixed condition.

2489 *Note - If the Inferior makes its own autonomous decision then it signals that decision with*
 2490 *CONFIRMED or CANCELLED and waits to receive a confirmatory CONFIRM or*

2491 *CANCEL, or a CONTRADICTION if the autonomous decision by the Inferior was*
 2492 *the opposite of that made by the Superior.*
 2493

Parameter	Type
superior-identifier	Identifier
inferior-identifier	Identifier
level	mixed/possible
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP address
sender-address	BTP address

2494

2495 **superior-identifier** The “superior-identifier” as on the ENROL message

2496 **inferior-identifier** The “inferior-identifier” as on the earlier ENROL message

2497 **level** indicates, with value “mixed” that a mixed condition has definitely occurred; or, with
 2498 value “possible” that it is unable to determine whether a mixed condition has occurred
 2499 or not.

2500 **qualifiers** standardised or other qualifiers.

2501 **target-address** the address to which the HAZARD is sent. This will be the superior
 2502 address from the ENROL message.

2503 **sender-address** the address from which the HAZARD is sent. This is an address of the
 2504 Inferior.

2505 Types of FAULT possible (sent to “sender-address”)

2506 ***General***

2507 ***InvalidSuperior*** – if “superior-identifier” is unknown

2508 ***InvalidInferior*** – if no ENROL has been received for this “inferior-identifier”, or if
 2509 RESIGN has been received from this Inferior

2510 The form HAZARD/mixed refers to a HAZARD message with “level” = “mixed”, the form
 2511 HAZARD/possible refers to a HAZARD message with “level” = “possible”.

2512 **CONTRADICTION**

2513 Sent by the Superior to an Inferior that has taken an autonomous decision contrary to the decision
2514 for the atom. This is detected by the Superior when the ‘wrong’ one of CONFIRMED or
2515 CANCELLED is received. CONTRADICTION is also sent in response to a HAZARD message.

Parameter	Type
inferior-identifier	Identifier
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP address
sender-address	BTP address

2516

2517 **inferior-identifier** The “inferior-identifier” as on the earlier ENROL message for this
2518 Inferior.

2519 **qualifiers** standardised or other qualifiers.

2520 **target-address** the address to which the CONTRADICTION message is sent. This will be
2521 the “inferior-address” from the ENROL message.

2522 **sender-address** the address from which the CONTRADICTION is sent. This is an
2523 address of the Superior.

2524 Types of FAULT possible (sent to “sender-address”)

2525 **General**

2526 **InvalidInferior** – if “inferior-identifier” is unknown

2527 **WrongState** – if neither CONFIRMED or CANCELLED has been sent by this Inferior

2528 **SUPERIOR_STATE**

2529 Sent by a Superior as a query to an Inferior when

2530 1. in the active state

2531 2. there is uncertainty what state the Inferior has reached (due to recovery from
2532 previous failure or other reason).

2533 Also sent by the Superior to the Inferior in response to a received INFERIOR_STATE, in
2534 particular states.

Parameter	Type
inferior-identifier	Identifier

Parameter	Type
status	<i>see below</i>
response-requested	Boolean
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP address
sender-address	BTP address

2535

2536 **inferior-identifier** The “inferior-identifier” as on the earlier ENROL message for this
 2537 Inferior.

2538 **status** states the current state of the Superior, in terms of its relation to this Inferior only.

status value	Meaning
<i>active</i>	The relationship with the Inferior is in the active state from the perspective of the Superior; ENROLLED has been sent, PREPARE has not been sent and PREPARED has not been received (as far as the Superior knows)
<i>prepared-received</i>	PREPARED has been received from the Inferior, but no outcome is yet available
<i>inaccessible</i>	The state information for the Superior, or for its relationship with this Inferior, if it exists, cannot be accessed at the moment. This should be a transient condition
<i>unknown</i>	The Inferior is not known – it does not exist from the perspective of the Superior. The Inferior can treat this as an instruction to cancel any associated operations

2539

2540 **response-requested** true, if SUPERIOR_STATE is sent as a query at the Superior’s
 2541 initiative; false, if SUPERIOR_STATE is sent in reply to a received
 2542 INFERIOR_STATE or other message. Can only be true if status is active or prepared-
 2543 received. Default is “false”

2544 **qualifiers** standardised or other qualifiers.

2545 **target-address** the address to which the SUPERIOR_STATE message is sent. This will
 2546 be the “inferior-address” from the ENROL message.

2547 **sender-address** the address from which the SUPERIOR_STATE is sent. This is an
2548 address of the Superior.

2549 The Inferior, on receiving SUPERIOR_STATE with “response-requested = true, should reply in a
2550 timely manner by (depending on its state) repeating the previous message it sent or by sending
2551 INFERIOR_STATE with the appropriate status value.

2552 A status of unknown shall only be sent if it has been determined for certain that the Superior has
2553 no knowledge of the Inferior, or (equivalently) it can be determined that the relationship with the
2554 Inferior was cancelled. If there could be persistent information corresponding to the Superior, but
2555 it is not accessible from the entity receiving an INFERIOR_STATE/*y (or other) message
2556 targeted to the Superior or that entity cannot determine whether any such persistent information
2557 exists or not, the response shall be Inaccessible.

2558 SUPERIOR_STATE/unknown is also used as a response to messages, other than
2559 INFERIOR_STATE/*y that are received when the Inferior is not known (and it is known there is
2560 no state information for it).

2561 The form SUPERIOR_STATE/abcd refers to a SUPERIOR_STATE message status having a
2562 value equivalent to “abcd” (for active, prepared-received, unknown and inaccessible) and with
2563 “response-requested” = “false”. SUPERIOR_STATE/abcd/y refers to a similar message, but with
2564 “response-requested” = “true”. The form SUPERIOR_STATE/*y refers to a
2565 SUPERIOR_STATE message with “response-requested” = “true” and any value for status.

2566 INFERIOR_STATE

2567 Sent by an Inferior as a query when in the active state to a Superior, when (due recovery from
2568 previous failure or other reason) there is uncertainty what state the Superior has reached.

2569 Also sent by the Inferior to the Superior in response to a received SUPERIOR_STATE, in
2570 particular states.

Parameter	Type
superior-identifier	Identifier
inferior-identifier	Identifier
status	<i>see below</i>
response-requested	Boolean
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP address
sender-address	BTP address

2571

2572 **superior-identifier** The “superior-identifier” as used on the ENROL message

2573 **inferior-identifier** The “inferior-identifier” as on the ENROL message

2574 **status** states the current state of the Inferior for the atomic business transaction, which
2575 corresponds to the last message sent to the Superior by (or in the case of ENROL for)
2576 the Inferior

status value	meaning/previous message sent
<i>active</i>	The relationship with the Superior is in the active state from the perspective of the Inferior; ENROL has been sent, a decision to send PREPARED has not been made.
<i>inaccessible</i>	The state information for the relationship with the Superior, if it exists, cannot be accessed at the moment. This should be a transient condition
<i>unknown</i>	The Inferior is not known – it does not exist from the perspective of the Superior. The Inferior can be treated as cancelled

2577

2578 **response-requested** “true” if INFERIOR_STATE is sent as a query at the Superior’s
2579 initiative; “false” if INFERIOR_STATE is sent in reply to a received
2580 SUPERIOR_STATE or other message. Can only be “true” if “status” is “active” or
2581 “prepared-received”. Default is “false”

2582 **qualifiers** standardised or other qualifiers.

2583 **target-address** the address to which the INFERIOR_STATE is sent. This will be the
2584 “target-address” as used the original ENROL message.

2585 **sender-address** the address from which the INFERIOR_STATE is sent. This is an
2586 address of the Inferior.

2587 The Superior, on receiving INFERIOR_STATE with “response-requested” = “true”, should reply
2588 in a timely manner by (depending on its state) repeating the previous message it sent or by
2589 sending SUPERIOR_STATE with the appropriate status value.

2590 A status of “unknown” shall only be sent if it has been determined for certain that the Inferior has
2591 no knowledge of a relationship with the Superior. If there could be persistent information
2592 corresponding to the Superior, but it is not accessible from the entity receiving an
2593 SUPERIOR_STATE/*y (or other) message targetted on the Inferior or the entity cannot
2594 determine whether any such persistent information exists, the response shall be “inaccessible”.

2595 INFERIOR_STATE/unknown is also used as a response to messages, other than
2596 SUPERIOR_STATE/*y that are received when the Inferior is not known (and it is known there
2597 is no state information for it).

2598 A SUPERIOR_STATE/INFERIOR_STATE exchange that determines that one or both sides are
2599 in the active state does not require that the Inferior be cancelled (unlike some other two-phase

2600 commit protocols). The relationship between Superior and Inferior, and related application
 2601 elements may be continued, with new application messages carrying the same CONTEXT.
 2602 Similarly, if the Inferior is prepared but the Superior is active, there is no required impact on the
 2603 progression of the relationship between them.

2604 The form INFERIOR_STATE/abcd refers to a INFERIOR_STATE message status having a
 2605 value equivalent to “abcd” (for active, unknown and inaccessible) and with “response-requested”
 2606 = “false”. INFERIOR_STATE/abcd/y refers to a similar message, but with “response-requested”
 2607 = “true”. The form INFERIOR_STATE/*y refers to a INFERIOR_STATE message with
 2608 “response-requested” = “true” and any value for status.

2609 **REDIRECT**

2610 Sent when the address previously given for a Superior or Inferior is no longer valid and the
 2611 relevant state information is now accessible with a different address (but the same superior or
 2612 “inferior-identifier”).

Parameter	Type
superior-identifier	Identifier
inferior-identifier	Identifier
old-address	Set of BTP addresses
new-address	Set of BTP addresses
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP address

2613

2614 **superior-identifier** The “superior-identifier” as on the CONTEXT message and used on an
 2615 ENROL message. (present only if the REDIRECT is sent from the Inferior).

2616 **inferior-identifier** The “inferior-identifier” as on the ENROL message

2617 **old-address** The previous address of the sender of REDIRECT. A match is considered to
 2618 apply if any of the “old-address” values match one that is already known.

2619 **new-address** The (set of alternatives) “new-address” values to be used for messages sent
 2620 to this entity.

2621 **qualifiers** standardised or other qualifiers.

2622 **target-address** the address to which the REDIRECT is sent. This is the address of the
 2623 opposite side (superior/inferior) as given in a CONTEXT or ENROL message

2624 If the actor whose address is changed is an Inferior, the “new-address” value replaces the
 2625 “inferior-address” as present in the ENROL.

2626 If the actor whose address is changed is a Superior, the “new-address” value replaces the Superior
2627 address as present in the CONTEXT message (or as present in any other mechanism used to
2628 establish the Superior:Inferior relationship).

2629 Messages used in control relationships

2630 BEGIN

2631 A request to a Factory to create a new Business Transaction. This may either be a new top-level
2632 transaction, in which case the Composer or Coordinator will be the Decider, or the new Business
2633 Transaction may be immediately made the Inferior within an existing Business Transaction (thus
2634 creating a sub-Composer or sub-Coordinator).

Parameter	Type
transaction-type	cohesion/atom
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP address
reply-address	BTP address

2635

2636 **transaction-type** identifies whether a new Cohesion or new Atom is to be created; this
2637 value will be the “superior-type” in the new CONTEXT

2638 **qualifiers** standardised or other qualifiers. The standard qualifier “Transaction timelimit”
2639 may be present on BEGIN, to set the timelimit for the new business transaction and
2640 will be copied to the new CONTEXT. The standard qualifier “Inferior name” may be
2641 present if there is a CONTEXT related to the BEGIN.

2642 **target-address** the address of the entity to which the BEGIN is sent. How this address is
2643 acquired and the nature of the entity are outside the scope of this specification.

2644 **reply-address** the address to which the replying BEGUN and related CONTEXT message
2645 should be sent.

2646 A new top-level Business Transaction is created if there is no CONTEXT related to the BEGIN.
2647 A Business Transaction that is to be Inferior in an existing Business Transaction is created if the
2648 CONTEXT message for the existing Business Transaction is related to the BEGIN. In this case,
2649 the Factory is responsible for enrolling the new Composer or Coordinator as an Inferior of the
2650 Superior identified in that CONTEXT.

2651 *Note – This specification does not provide a standardised means to determine which of*
2652 *the Inferiors of a sub-Composer are in its confirm set. This is considered part of the*
2653 *application:inferior relationship.*

2654 The forms BEGIN/cohesion and BEGIN/atom refer to BEGIN with “transaction-type” having the
2655 corresponding value.

2656 Types of FAULT possible (sent to “reply-address”)

2657

General

2658

Redirect – if the Factory now has a different address

2659

WrongState - only issued if there is a related CONTEXT, and the Superior identified by

2660

the CONTEXT is in the wrong state to enrol new Inferiors

2661

BEGUN

2662

BEGUN is a reply to BEGIN. There is always a related CONTEXT, which is the CONTEXT for

2663

the new business transaction.

Parameter	Type
decider-address	Set of BTP addresses
inferior-address	Set of BTP addresses
transaction-identifier	Identifier
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP address

2664

2665

decider-address for a top-most transaction (no CONTEXT related to the BEGIN), this is the address to which PREPARE_INFERIORS, CONFIRM_TRANSACTION, CANCEL_TRANSACTION, CANCEL_INFERIORS and REQUEST_INFERIOR_STATUSES messages are to be sent; if a CONTEXT was related to the BEGIN this parameter is absent

2666

2667

2668

2669

2670

inferior-address for a non-top-most transaction (a CONTEXT was related to the BEGIN), this is the “inferior-address” used in the enrolment with the Superior identified by the CONTEXT related to the BEGIN. The parameter is optional (implementor’s choice) if this is not a top-most transaction; it shall be absent if this is a top-most transaction.

2671

2672

2673

2674

transaction-identifier if this is a top-most transaction, this is an globally-unambiguous identifier for the new Decider (Composer or Coordinator). If this is not a top-most transaction, the transaction-identifier shall be the inferior-identifier used in the enrolment with the Superior identified by the CONTEXT related to the BEGIN.

2675

2676

2677

2678

Note – The “transaction-identifier” may be identical to the “superior-identifier” in the CONTEXT that is related to the BEGUN

2679

2680

qualifiers standardised or other qualifiers.

2681

target-address the address to which the BEGUN is sent. This will be the “reply-address” from the BEGIN.

2682

2683

At implementation option, the “decider-address” and/or “inferior-address” and the “superior-address” in the related CONTEXT may be the same or may be different. There is no general requirement that they even use the same bindings. Any may also be the same as the “target-

2684

2685

2686 address” of the BEGIN message (the identifier on messages will ensure they are applied to the
2687 appropriate Composer or Coordinator).

2688 No FAULT messages are issued on receiving BEGUN.

2689 PREPARE_INFERIORS

2690 Sent from a Terminator to a Decider, but only if it is a Cohesion Composer, to tell it to prepare all
2691 or some of its inferiors, by sending PREPARE to any that have not already sent PREPARED,
2692 RESIGN or CANCELLED to the Decider (Composer) on its relationships as Superior. If the
2693 inferiors-list parameter is absent, the request applies to all the inferiors; if the parameter is
2694 present, it applies only to the identified inferiors of the Decider (Composer).

Parameter	Type
transaction-identifier	Identifier
inferiors-list	List of Identifiers
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP address
reply-address	BTP address

2695

2696 **transaction identifier** identifies the Decider and will be the transaction-identifier from the
2697 BEGUN message.

2698 **inferiors-list** defines which of the Inferiors of this Decider preparation is requested for,
2699 using the “inferior-identifiers” as on the ENROL received by the Decider (in its role as
2700 Superior). If this parameter is absent, the PREPARE applies to all Inferiors.

2701 **qualifiers** standardised or other qualifiers.

2702 **target-address** the address to which the PREPARE_INFERIORS message is sent. This
2703 will be the decider-address from the BEGUN message.

2704 **reply-address** the address of the Terminator sending the PREPARE_INFERIORS
2705 message.

2706 For all Inferiors identified in the inferiors-list parameter (all Inferiors if the parameter is absent),
2707 from which none of PREPARED, CANCELLED or RESIGNED has been received, the Decider
2708 shall issue PREPARE. It will reply to the Terminator, using the “reply-address” on the
2709 PREPARE_INFERIORS message, sending an INFERIOR_STATUSES message giving the status
2710 of the Inferiors identified on the inferiors-list parameter (all of them if the parameter was absent).

2711 If one or more of the “inferior-identifier”s in the "inferior-list" is unknown (does not correspond
2712 to an enrolled Inferior), a FAULT/Invalid-inferior shall be returned. It is an implementation
2713 option whether CANCEL is sent to any of the Inferiors that are validly identified in the "inferiors-
2714 list".

2715 Types of FAULT possible (sent to Superior address)

2716 **General**

2717 **InvalidDecider** – if Decider address is unknown

2718 **Redirect** – if the Decider now has a different “decider-address”

2719 **UnknownTransaction** – if the transaction-identifier is unknown

2720 **InvalidInferior** – if one or more inferior-identifiers on the inferiors-list is unknown

2721 **WrongState** – if a CONFIRM_TRANSACTION or CANCEL_TRANSACTION has
2722 already been received by this Composer.

2723 The form PREPARE_INFERIORS/all refers to a PREPARE_INFERIORS message where the
2724 “inferiors-list” parameter is absent. The form PREPARE_INFERIORS/specific refers to a
2725 PREPARE_INFERIORS message where the “inferiors-list” parameter is present.

2726 **CONFIRM_TRANSACTION**

2727 Sent from a Terminator to a Decider to request confirmation of the business transaction. If the
2728 business transaction is a Cohesion, the confirm-set is specified by the “inferiors-list” parameter.

Parameter	Type
transaction-identifier	Identifier
inferiors-list	List of Identifiers
report-hazard	Boolean
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP address
reply-address	BTP address

2729

2730 **transaction-identifier** identifies the Decider. This will be the transaction-identifier from
2731 the BEGUN message.

2732 **inferiors-list** defines which Inferiors enrolled with the Decider, if it is a Cohesion
2733 Composer, are to be confirmed, using the “inferior-identifiers” as on the ENROL
2734 received by the Decider (in its role as Superior). Shall be absent if the Decider is an
2735 Atom Coordinator.

2736 **report-hazard** Defines whether the Terminator wishes to be informed of hazard events and
2737 contradictory decisions within the business transaction. If “report-hazard” is “true”, the
2738 receiver will wait until responses (CONFIRMED, CANCELLED or HAZARD) have
2739 been received from all of its inferiors, ensuring that any hazard events are reported. If
2740 “report-hazard” is “false”, the Decider will reply with

2741 TRANSACTION_CONFIRMED or TRANSACTION_CANCELLED as soon as the
2742 decision for the transaction is known.

2743 **qualifiers** standardised or other qualifiers.

2744 **target-address** the address to which the CONFIRM_TRANSACTION message is sent.
2745 This will be the “decider-address” on the BEGUN message.

2746 **reply-address** the address of the Terminator sending the CONFIRM_TRANSACTION
2747 message.

2748 If the “inferiors-list” parameter is present, the Inferiors identified shall be the “confirm-set” of the
2749 Cohesion. If the parameter is absent and the business transaction is a Cohesion, the “confirm-set”
2750 shall be all remaining Inferiors. If the business transaction is an Atom, the “confirm-set” is
2751 automatically all the Inferiors.

2752 Any Inferiors from which RESIGN is received are not counted in the confirm-set.

2753 If, for each of the Inferiors in the confirm-set, PREPARE has not been sent and PREPARED has
2754 not been received, PREPARE shall be issued to that Inferior.

2755 *NOTE -- If PREPARE has been sent but PREPARED not yet received from an Inferior in*
2756 *the confirm-set, it is an implementation option whether and when to re-send*
2757 *PREPARE. The Superior implementation may choose to re-send PREPARE if there*
2758 *are indications that the earlier PREPARE was not delivered.*

2759 A confirm decision may be made only if PREPARED has been received from all Inferiors in the
2760 “confirm-set”. The making of the decision shall be persistent (and if it is not possible to persist
2761 the decision, it is not made). If there is only one remaining Inferior in the “confirm set” and
2762 PREPARE has not been sent to it, CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE may be sent to it.

2763 All remaining Inferiors that are not in the confirm set shall be cancelled.

2764 If a confirm decision is made and “report-hazard” was “false”, a
2765 TRANSACTION_CONFIRMED message shall be sent to the “reply-address”.

2766 If a cancel decision is made and “report-hazard” was “false”, a TRANSACTION_CANCELLED
2767 message shall be sent to the “reply-address”.

2768 If "report-hazard" was "true", TRANSACTION_CONFIRMED shall be sent to the "reply-
2769 address" after CONFIRMED has been received from each Inferior in the confirm-set and
2770 CANCELLED or RESIGN from each and any Inferior not in the confirm-set.

2771 If “report-hazard” was “true” and any HAZARD or contradictory message was received (i.e.
2772 CANCELLED from an Inferior in the confirm-set or CONFIRMED from an Inferior not in the
2773 confirm-set), an INFERIOR_STATUSES reporting the status for all Inferiors shall be sent to the
2774 “reply-address”.

2775 If one or more of the "inferior-identifier"s in the "inferior-list" is unknown (does not correspond
2776 to an enrolled Inferior), a FAULT/Invalid-inferior shall be returned. The Decider shall not make a
2777 confirm decision and shall not send CONFIRM to any Inferior.

2778 Types of FAULT possible (sent to “reply-address”)

2779 **General**

2780 **InvalidDecider** – if Decider address is unknown

2781 **Redirect** – if the Decider now has a different “decider-address”

2782 **UnknownTransaction** – if the transaction-identifier is unknown

2783 **InvalidInferior** – if one or more “inferior -identifiers” in the inferiors-list is unknown

2784 **WrongState** – if a CANCEL_TRANSACTION has already been received .

2785 The form CONFIRM_TRANSACTION/all refers to a CONFIRM_TRANSACTION message
 2786 where the “inferiors-list” parameter is absent. The form CONFIRM_TRANSACTION/specific
 2787 refers to a CONFIRM_TRANSACTION message where the “inferiors-list” parameter is present.

2788 **TRANSACTION_CONFIRMED**

2789 A Decider sends TRANSACTION_CONFIRMED to a Terminator in reply to
 2790 CONFIRM_TRANSACTION if all of the confirm-set confirms (and, for a Cohesion, all other
 2791 Inferiors cancel) without reporting hazards, or if the Decider made a confirm decision and the
 2792 CONFIRM_TRANSACTION had a “report-hazards” value of “false”.

Parameter	Type
transaction-identifier	identifier
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP address

2793

2794 **transaction-identifier** the “transaction-identifier” as on the BEGUN message (i.e. the
 2795 identifier of the Decider as a whole).

2796 **qualifiers** standardised or other qualifiers.

2797 **target-address** the address to which the TRANSACTION_CONFIRMED is sent., this
 2798 will be the “reply-address” from the CONFIRM_TRANSACTION message

2799 Types of FAULT possible (sent to “decider-address”)

2800 **General**

2801 **InvalidTerminator** – if Terminator address is unknown

2802 **UnknownTransaction** – if the transaction-identifier is unknown

2803 **CANCEL_TRANSACTION**

2804 Sent by a Terminator to a Decider at any time before CONFIRM_TRANSACTION has been sent.

Parameter	Type
transaction-identifier	Identifier
report-hazard	Boolean
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP address
reply-address	BTP address

2805

2806 **transaction-identifier** identifies the Decider and will be the transaction-identifier from the
2807 BEGUN message.

2808 **report-hazard** Defines whether the Terminator wishes to be informed of hazard events and
2809 contradictory decisions within the business transaction. If "report-hazard" is "true", the
2810 receiver will wait until responses (CONFIRMED, CANCELLED or HAZARD) have
2811 been received from all of its inferiors, ensuring that any hazard events are reported. If
2812 "report-hazard" is "false", the Decider will reply with
2813 TRANSACTION_CANCELLED immediately.

2814 **qualifiers** standardised or other qualifiers.

2815 **target-address** the address to which the CANCEL_TRANSACTION message is sent.
2816 This will be the decider-address from the BEGUN message.

2817 **reply-address** the address of the Terminator sending the CANCEL_TRANSACTION
2818 message.

2819 The business transaction is cancelled – this is propagated to any remaining Inferiors by issuing
2820 CANCEL to them. No more Inferiors will be permitted to enrol.

2821 If "report-hazard" was "false", a TRANSACTION_CANCELLED message shall be sent to the
2822 "reply-address".

2823 If "report-hazard" was "true" and any HAZARD or CONFIRMED message was received, an
2824 INFERIOR_STATUSES reporting the status for all Inferiors shall be sent to the "reply-address".

2825 If "report-hazard" was "true", TRANSACTION_CANCELLED shall be sent to the "reply-
2826 address" after CANCELLED or RESIGN has been received from each Inferior.

2827 Types of FAULT possible (sent to Superior address)

2828 **General**

- 2829 *InvalidDecider* – if Decider address is unknown
- 2830 *Redirect* – if the Decider now has a different “decider-address”
- 2831 *UnknownTransaction* – if the transaction-identifier is unknown
- 2832 *WrongState* – if a CONFIRM_TRANSACTION has been received by this Composer.

2833 **CANCEL_INFERIORS**

2834 Sent by a Terminator to a Decider, but only if is a Cohesion Composer, at any time before
 2835 CONFIRM_TRANSACTION or CANCEL_TRANSACTION has been sent.

Parameter	Type
transaction-identifier	Identifier
inferiors-list	List of Identifiers
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP address
reply-address	BTP address

- 2836
- 2837 **transaction-identifier** identifies the Decider and will be the transaction-identifier from the
 2838 BEGUN message.
- 2839 **inferiors-list** defines which of the Inferiors of this Decider are to be cancelled, using the
 2840 “inferior-identifiers” as on the ENROL received by the Decider (in its role as
 2841 Superior).
- 2842 **qualifiers** standardised or other qualifiers.
- 2843 **target-address** the address to which the CANCEL_TRANSACTION message is sent.
 2844 This will be the decider-address from the BEGUN message.
- 2845 **reply-address** the address of the Terminator sending the CANCEL_TRANSACTION
 2846 message.

2847 Only the Inferiors identified in the inferiors-list are to be cancelled. Any other inferiors are
 2848 unaffected by a CANCEL_INFERIORS. Further Inferiors may be enrolled.

2849 *Note – A CANCEL_INFERIORS for all of the currently enrolled Inferiors will leave the*
 2850 *cohesion ‘empty’, but permitted to continue with new Inferiors, if any enrol.*

2851 If one or more of the "inferior-identifier"s in the "inferior-list" is unknown (does not correspond
 2852 to an enrolled Inferior), a FAULT/Invalid-inferior shall be returned. It is an implementation
 2853 option whether CANCEL is sent to any of the Inferiors that are validly identified in the "inferiors-
 2854 list".

2855 Types of FAULT possible (sent to Superior address)

2856 **General**

2857 **InvalidDecider** – if Decider address is unknown

2858 **Redirect** – if the Decider now has a different “decider-address”

2859 **UnknownTransaction** – if the transaction-identifier is unknown

2860 **InvalidInferior** – if one or more inferior-identifiers on the inferiors-list is unknown

2861 **WrongState** – if a CONFIRM_TRANSACTION or CANCEL_TRANSACTION has been
 2862 received by this Composer.

2863 **TRANSACTION_CANCELLED**

2864 A Decider sends TRANSACTION_CANCELLED to a Terminator in reply to
 2865 CANCEL_TRANSACTION or in reply to CONFIRM_TRANSACTION if the Decider decided
 2866 to cancel. In both cases, TRANSACTION_CANCELLED is used only if all Inferiors cancelled
 2867 without reporting hazards or the CANCEL_TRANSACTION or CONFIRM_TRANSACTION
 2868 had a “report-hazard” value of “false.

Parameter	
transaction-identifier	identifier
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP address

2869

2870 **transaction-identifier** the “transaction-identifier” as on the BEGUN message (i.e. the
 2871 identifier of the Decider as a whole).

2872 **qualifiers** standardised or other qualifiers.

2873 **target-address** the address to which the TRANSACTION_CANCELLED is sent. This
 2874 will be the “reply-address” from the CANCEL_TRANSACTION or
 2875 CONFIRM_TRANSACTION message.

2876 Types of FAULT possible (sent to “decider-address”)

2877 **General**

2878 **InvalidTerminator** – if Terminator address is unknown

2879 **UnknownTransaction** – if the transaction-identifier is unknown

2880 **REQUEST_INFERIOR_STATUSES**

2881 Sent to a Decider to ask it to report the status of its Inferiors with an INFERIOR_STATUSES
2882 message. It can also be sent to any actor with a “superior-address” or “inferior-address”, asking it
2883 about the status of that transaction tree nodes Inferiors, if there are any. In this latter case, the
2884 receiver may reject the request with a FAULT(StatusRefused). If it is prepared to reply, but has
2885 no Inferiors, it replies with an INFERIOR_STATUSES with an empty “status-list” parameter.

Parameter	Type
target-identifier	Identifier
inferiors-list	List of Identifiers
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP address
reply-address	BTP address

2886

2887 **target-identifier** identifies the transaction (or transaction tree node). When the message is
2888 used to a Decider, this will be the transaction-identifier from the BEGUN message.
2889 Otherwise it will be the superior-identifier from a CONTEXT or an inferior-identifier
2890 from an ENROL message.

2891 **inferiors-list** defines which inferiors enrolled with the target are to be included in the
2892 INFERIOR_STATUSES, using the “inferior-identifiers” as on the ENROL received
2893 by the Decider (in its role as Superior). If the list is absent, the status of all enrolled
2894 Inferiors will be reported.

2895 **qualifiers** standardised or other qualifiers.

2896 **target-address** the address to which the REQUEST_STATUS message is sent. When
2897 used to a Decider, this will be the “decider-address” from the BEGUN message.
2898 Otherwise it may be a “superior-address” from a CONTEXT or “inferior-address”
2899 from an ENROL message.

2900 **reply-address** the address to which the replying INFERIOR_STATUSES is to be sent

2901 Types of FAULT possible (sent to reply-address)

2902 **General**

2903 **Redirect** – if the intended target now has a different address

2904 **StatusRefused** – if the receiver is not prepared to report its status to the sender of this
2905 message. This “fault-type” shall not be issued when a Decider receives
2906 REQUEST_STATUSES from the Terminator.

2907 **UnknownTransaction** – if the transaction-identifier is unknown

2908 The form REQUEST_INFERIOR_STATUSES/all refers to a REQUEST_STATUS with the
2909 inferiors-list absent. The form REQUEST_INFERIOR_STATUS/specific refers to a
2910 REQUEST_INFERIOR_STATUS with the inferiors-list present.

2911 INFERIOR_STATUSES

2912 Sent by a Decider to report the status of all or some of its inferiors in response to a
2913 REQUEST_INFERIOR_STATUSES, PREPARE_INFERIORS, CANCEL_INFERIORS,
2914 CANCEL_TRANSACTION with “report-hazard” value of “true” and
2915 CONFIRM_TRANSACTION with “report-hazard” value of “true”. It is also used by any actor in
2916 response to a received REQUEST_INFERIOR_STATUSES to report the status of inferiors, if
2917 there are any.

Parameter	Type
responders-identifier	Identifier
status-list	Set of Status items - see below
general-qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP address

2918

2919 **responders-identifier** the target-identifier used on the
2920 REQUEST_INFERIOR_STATUSES.

2921 **status-list** contains a number of Status-items, each reporting the status of one of the
2922 inferiors of the Decider. The fields of a Status-item are

Field	Type
inferior-identifier	Inferior-identifier, identifying which inferior this Status-item contains information for.
status	One of the status values below (these are a subset of those for STATUS)
qualifiers	A list of qualifiers as received from the particular inferior or associated with the inferior in earlier messages (e.g. an Inferior name qualifier).

2923

2924 The status value reports the current status of the particular inferior, as known to the Decider
2925 (Composer or Coordinator). Values are:

status value	Meaning
<i>active</i>	The Inferior is enrolled
<i>resigned</i>	RESIGNED has been received from the Inferior

status value	Meaning
<i>preparing</i>	PREPARE has been sent to the inferior, none of PREPARED, RESIGNED, CANCELLED, HAZARD have been received
<i>prepared</i>	PREPARED has been received
<i>autonomously confirmed</i>	CONFIRMED/auto has been received, no completion message has been sent
<i>autonomously cancelled</i>	PREPARED had been received, and since then CANCELLED has been received but no completion message has been sent
<i>confirming</i>	CONFIRM has been sent, no outcome reply has been received
<i>confirmed</i>	CONFIRMED/response has been received
<i>cancelling</i>	CANCEL has been sent, no outcome reply has been received
<i>cancelled</i>	CANCELLED has been received, and PREPARED was not received previously
<i>cancel-contradiction</i>	Confirm had been ordered (and may have been sent), but CANCELLED was received
<i>confirm-contradiction</i>	Cancel had been ordered (and may have been sent) but CONFIRM/auto was received
<i>hazard</i>	A HAZARD message has been received
<i>invalid</i>	No such inferior is enrolled (used only in reply to a REQUEST_INFERIOR_STATUSES/specific)

2926

2927 **general-qualifiers** standardised or other qualifiers applying to the
 2928 INFERIOR_STATUSES as a whole. Each Status-item contains a “qualifiers” field
 2929 containing qualifiers applying to (and received from) the particular Inferior.

2930 **target-address** the address to which the INFERIOR_STATUSES is sent. This will be the
 2931 “reply-address” on the received message

2932 If the inferiors-list parameter was present on the received message, only the inferiors identified by
 2933 that parameter shall have their status reported in status-list of this message. If the inferiors-list
 2934 parameter was absent, the status of all enrolled inferiors shall be reported, except that an inferior
 2935 that had been reported as *cancelled* or *resigned* on a previous INFERIOR_STATUSES message
 2936 **may** be omitted (sender’s option).

2937 Types of FAULT possible (sent to “decider-address”)

2938

General

2939

InvalidTerminator – if Terminator address is unknown

2940

UnknownTransaction – if the transaction-identifier is unknown

2941

Groups – combinations of related messages

2942

The following combinations of messages form related groups, for which the meaning of the group is not just the aggregate of the meanings of the messages. The “&” notation is used to indicate relatedness. Messages appearing in parentheses in the names of groups in this section indicate messages that may or may not be present. The notation A & B / & C in a group name in this section indicates a group that contains A and B or A and C or A, B and C, possibly with any of those appearing more than once.

2943

2944

2945

2946

2947

2948

CONTEXT & application message

2949

2950

2951

2952

2953

2954

Meaning: the transmission of the application message is deemed to be part of the business transaction identified by the CONTEXT. The exact effect of this for application work implied by the transmission of the message is determined by the application – in many cases, it will mean the effects of the application message are to be subject to the outcome delivered to an enrolled Inferior, thus requiring the enrolment of a new Inferior if no appropriate Inferior is enrolled or if the CONTEXT is for cohesion.

2955

2956

2957

2958

target-address: the “target-address” is that of the application message. It is not required that the application address be a BTP address (in particular, there is no BTP-defined “additional information” field – the application protocol (and its binding) may or may not have a similar construct).

2959

2960

2961

2962

There may be multiple application messages related to a single CONTEXT message. All the application messages so related are deemed to be part of the business transaction identified by the CONTEXT. This specification does not imply any further relatedness among the application messages themselves (though the application might).

2963

2964

2965

The actor that sends the group shall retain knowledge of the Superior address in the CONTEXT. If the CONTEXT is a CONTEXT/atom, the actor shall also keep track of transmitted CONTEXTs for which no CONTEXT_REPLY has been received.

2966

2967

2968

If the CONTEXT is a CONTEXT/atom, the actor receiving the CONTEXT shall ensure that a CONTEXT_REPLY message is sent back to the “reply-address” of the CONTEXT with the appropriate completion status.

2969

2970

2971

2972

2973

Note – The representation of the relation between CONTEXT and one or more application messages depends on the binding to the carrier protocol. It is not necessary that the CONTEXT and application messages be closely associated “on the wire” (or even sent on the same connection) – some kind of referencing mechanism may be used.

2974 **CONTEXT_REPLY & ENROL**

2975 **Meaning:** the enrolment of the Inferior identified in the ENROL is to be performed with
2976 the Superior identified in the CONTEXT message this CONTEXT_REPLY is replying
2977 to. If the “completion-status” of CONTEXT_REPLY is “related”, failure of this
2978 enrolment shall prevent the confirmation of the business transaction.

2979 **target-address:** the “target-address” is that of the CONTEXT_REPLY. This will be the
2980 “reply-address” of the CONTEXT message (in many cases, including request/reply
2981 application exchanges, this address will usually be implicit).

2982 The “target-address” of the ENROL message is omitted.

2983 The actor receiving the related group will use the retained Superior address from the
2984 CONTEXT sent earlier to forward the ENROL. When doing so, it changes the ENROL to
2985 ask for a response (if it was an ENROL/no-rsp-req) and supplies its own address as the
2986 “reply-address”, remembering the original “reply-address” if there was one.

2987 If ENROLLED is received and the original received ENROL was ENROL/rsp-req, the
2988 ENROLLED is forwarded back to the original “reply-address”.

2989 If this attempt fails (i.e. ENROLLED is not received), and the “completion-status” of the
2990 CONTEXT_REPLY was “related”, the actor is required to ensure that the Superior does
2991 not proceed to confirmation. How this is achieved is an implementation option, but must
2992 take account of the possibility that direct communication with the Superior may fail. (One
2993 method is to prevent CONFIRM_TRANSACTION being sent to the Superior (in its role
2994 as Decider); another is to enrol as another Inferior before sending the original CONTEXT
2995 out with an application message). If the Superior is a sub-coordinator or sub-composer,
2996 an enrolment failure must ensure the sub-coordinator does not send PREPARED to its
2997 own Superior.

2998 If the actor receiving the related group is also the Superior (i.e. it has the same binding
2999 address), the explicit forwarding of the ENROL is not required, but the resultant effect –
3000 that if enrolment fails the Superior does not confirm or issue PREPARED – shall be the
3001 same.

3002 A CONTEXT_REPLY & ENROL group may contain multiple ENROL messages, for
3003 several Inferiors. Each ENROL shall be forwarded and an ENROLLED reply received
3004 before the Superior is allowed to confirm if the “completion-status” in the
3005 CONTEXT_REPLY was “related”.

3006 When the group is constructed, if the CONTEXT had “superior-type” value of “atom”,
3007 the “completion-status” of the CONTEXT_REPLY shall be “related”. If the “superior-
3008 type” was “cohesive”, the “completion-status” shall be “incomplete” or “related” (as
3009 required by the application). If the value is “incomplete”, the actor receiving the group
3010 shall forward the ENROLs, but is not required to prevent confirmation (though it may do
3011 so).

3012 **CONTEXT_REPLY (& ENROL) & PREPARED / & CANCELLED**

3013 This combination is characterised by a related CONTEXT_REPLY and either or both of
3014 PREPARED and CANCELLED, with or without ENROL.

3015 **Meaning:** If ENROL is present, the meaning and required processing is the same as for
3016 CONTEXT_REPLY & ENROL. The PREPARED or CANCELLED message(s) are
3017 forwarded to the Superior identified in the CONTEXT message this CONTEXT_REPLY
3018 is replying to.

3019 *Note – the combination of CONTEXT_REPLY & ENROL & CANCELLED may be used*
3020 *to force cancellation of an atom*

3021 **target-address:** the “target-address” is that of the CONTEXT_REPLY. This will be the
3022 “reply-address” of the CONTEXT message (in many cases, including request/reply
3023 application exchanges, this address will usually be implicit).

3024 The “target-address” of the PREPARED and CANCELLED message is omitted – they
3025 will be sent to the Superior identified in the earlier CONTEXT message.

3026 The actor receiving the group forwards the PREPARED or CANCELLED message to the
3027 Superior in as for an ENROL, using the retained Superior address from the CONTEXT
3028 sent earlier, except there is no reply required from the Superior.

3029 If (as is usual) an ENROL and PREPARED or CANCELLED message are for the same
3030 Inferior, the ENROL shall be sent first, but the actor need not wait for the ENROLLED to
3031 come back before sending the PREPARED or CANCELLED (so an
3032 ENROL+PREPARED bundle from this actor to the Superior could be used).

3033 The group can contain multiple ENROL, PREPARED and CANCELLED messages.
3034 Each PREPARED and CANCELLED message will be for a different Inferior.. There is
3035 no constraint on the order of their forwarding, except that ENROL and PREPARED or
3036 CANCELLED for the same Inferior shall be delivered to the Superior in the order
3037 ENROL first, followed by the other message for that Inferior.

3038 **CONTEXT_REPLY & ENROL & application message (& PREPARED)**

3039 This combination is characterised by a related CONTEXT_REPLY, ENROL and an application
3040 message. PREPARED may or may not be present in the related group.

3041 **Meaning:** the relation between the BTP messages is as for the preceding groups, The
3042 transmission of the application message (and application effects implied by its
3043 transmission) has been associated with the Inferior identified by the ENROL and will be
3044 subject to the outcome delivered to that Inferior.

3045 **target-address:** the “target-address” of the group is the “target-address” of the
3046 CONTEXT_REPLY which shall also be the “target-address” of the application message.
3047 The ENROL and PREPARED messages do not contain their “target-address” parameters.

3048 The processing of ENROL and PREPARED messages is the same as for the previous
3049 groups.

3050 This group can be used when participation in business transaction (normally a cohesion),
3051 is initiated by the service (Inferior) side, which fetches or acquires the CONTEXT, with
3052 some associated application semantic, performs some work for the transaction and sends
3053 an application message with a related ENROL. The CONTEXT_REPLY allows the
3054 addressing of the application (and the CONTEXT_REPLY) to be distinct from that of the
3055 Superior.

3056 The actor receiving the group may associate the “inferior-identifier” received on the
3057 ENROL with the application message in a manner that is visible to the application
3058 receiving the message (e.g. for subsequent use in Terminator:Decider exchanges).

3059 **BEGUN & CONTEXT**

3060 **Meaning:** the CONTEXT is that for the new business transaction, containing the
3061 Superior address.

3062 **target-address:** the “target-address” is that of the BEGUN message – this will be the
3063 “reply-address” of the earlier BEGIN message.

3064 **BEGIN & CONTEXT**

3065 **Meaning:** the new business transaction is to be an Inferior (sub-coordinator or sub-
3066 composer) of the Superior identified by the CONTEXT. The Factory (receiver of the
3067 BEGIN) will perform the enrolment.

3068 **target-address:** the “target-address” is that of the BEGIN – this will be the address of the
3069 Factory.

3070 **Standard qualifiers**

3071 The following qualifiers are expected to be of general use to many applications and environments.
3072 The URI “urn:oasis:names:tc:BTP:1.0:qualifiers” is used in the Qualifier group
3073 value for the qualifiers defined here.

3074 **Transaction timelimit**

3075 The transaction timelimit allows the Superior (or an application element initiating the business
3076 transaction) to indicate the expected length of the active phase, and thus give an indication to the
3077 Inferior of when it would be appropriate to initiate cancellation if the active phase appears to
3078 continue too long. The time limit ends (the clock stops) when the Inferior decides to be prepared
3079 and issues PREPARED to the Superior.

3080 It should be noted that the expiry of the time limit does not change the permissible actions of the
3081 Inferior. At any time prior to deciding to be prepared (for an Inferior), the Inferior is **permitted** to
3082 initiate cancellation for internal reasons. The timelimit gives an indication to the entity of when it
3083 will be useful to exercise this right.

3084 The qualifier is propagated on a CONTEXT message.

3085 The “Qualifier name” shall be “transaction-timelimit”.

3086 The “Content” shall contain the following field:

Content field	Type
Timelimit	Integer

3087

3088 **Timelimit** indicates the maximum (further) duration, expressed as whole seconds from the
3089 time of transmission of the containing CONTEXT, of the active phase of the business
3090 transaction.

3091 Inferior timeout

3092 This qualifier allows an Inferior to limit the duration of its “promise”, when sending PREPARED,
3093 that it will maintain the ability to confirm or cancel the effects of all associated operations.
3094 Without this qualifier, an Inferior is expected to retain the ability to confirm or cancel
3095 indefinitely. If the timeout does expire, the Inferior is released from its promise and can apply the
3096 decision indicated in the qualifier.

3097 It should be noted that BTP recognises the possibility that an Inferior may be forced to apply a
3098 confirm or cancel decision before the CONFIRM or CANCEL is received and before this timeout
3099 expires (or if this qualifier is not used). Such a decision is termed a heuristic decision, and (as
3100 with other transaction mechanisms), is considered to be an exceptional event. As with heuristic
3101 decisions, the taking of an autonomous decision by a Inferior **subsequent** to the expiry of this
3102 timeout, is liable to cause contradictory decisions across the business transaction. BTP ensures
3103 that at least the occurrence of such a contradiction will be (eventually) reported to the Superior of
3104 the business transaction. BTP treats “true” heuristic decisions and autonomous decisions after
3105 timeout the same way – in fact, the expiry in this timeout does not cause a qualitative (state table)
3106 change in what can happen, but rather a step change in the probability that it will.

3107 The expiry of the timeout does not strictly require that the Inferior immediately invokes the
3108 intended decision, only that is at liberty to do so. An implementation may choose to only apply
3109 the decision if there is contention for the underlying resource, for example. Nevertheless,
3110 Superiors are recommended to avoid relying on this and ensure decisions for the business
3111 transaction are made before these timeouts expire (and allow a margin of error for network
3112 latency etc.).

3113 The qualifier may be present on a PREPARED message. If the PREPARED message has the
3114 “default-is cancel” parameter “true”, then the “IntendedDecision” field of this qualifier shall have
3115 the value “cancel”.

3116 The “Qualifier name” shall be “inferior-timeout”.

3117 The “Content” shall contain the following fields:

Content field	Type
Timeout	Integer
IntendedDecision	"confirm" or "cancel"

3118

3119 **Timeout** indicates how long, expressed as whole seconds from the time of transmission of the
3120 carrying message, the Inferior intends to maintain its ability to either confirm or cancel the effects
3121 of the associated operations, as ordered by the receiving Superior.

3122 **IntendedDecision** indicates which outcome will be applied, if the timeout completes and an
3123 autonomous decision is made.

3124 **Minimum inferior timeout**

3125 This qualifier allows a Superior to constrain the Inferior timeout qualifier received from the
3126 Inferior. If a Superior knows that the decision for the business transaction will not be determined
3127 for some period, it can require that Inferiors do not send PREPARED messages with Inferior
3128 timeouts that would expire before then. An Inferior that is unable or unwilling to send a
3129 PREPARED message with a longer (or no) timeout **should** cancel, and reply with CANCELLED.

3130 The qualifier may be present on a CONTEXT, ENROLLED or PREPARE message. If present on
3131 more than one, and with different values of the MinimumTimeout field, the value on
3132 ENROLLED shall prevail over that on CONTEXT and the value on PREPARE shall prevail over
3133 either of the others.

3134 The "Qualifier name" shall be "minimum-inferior-timeout".

3135 The "Content" shall contain the following field:

Content field	Type
MinimumTimeout	Integer

3136

3137 **Minimum Timeout** is the minimum value of timeout, expressed as whole seconds, that will be
3138 acceptable in the Inferior timeout qualifier on an answering PREPARED message.

3139 **Inferior name**

3140 This qualifier allows an Enroller to supply a name for the Inferior that will be visible on
3141 INFERIOR_STATUSES and thus allow the Terminator to determine which Inferior (of the
3142 Composer or Coordinator) is related to which application work. This is in addition to the
3143 "inferior-identifier" field. The name can be human-readable and can also be used in fault tracing,
3144 debugging and auditing.

3145 The name is never used by the BTP actors themselves to identify each other or to direct messages.
3146 (The BTP actors use the addresses and the identifiers in the message parameters for those
3147 purposes.)

3148 This specification makes no requirement that the names are unambiguous within any scope
3149 (unlike the globally unambiguous “inferior-identifier” on ENROLLED and BEGUN). Other
3150 specifications, including those defining use of BTP with a particular application may place
3151 requirements on the use and form of the names. (This may include reference to information
3152 passed in application messages or in other, non-standardised, qualifiers.)

3153 The qualifier may be present on BEGIN, ENROL and in the “qualifiers” field of a Status-item in
3154 INFERIOR_STATUSES. It is present on BEGIN only if there is a related CONTEXT; if present,
3155 the same qualifier value **should** be included in the consequent ENROL. If
3156 INFERIOR_STATUSES includes a Status-item for an Inferior whose ENROL had an inferior-
3157 name qualifier, the same qualifier value **should** be included in the Status-item.

3158 The “Qualifier -name” shall be “inferior-name”

3159 The “Content” shall contain the following fields:

Content field	Type
inferior-name	String

3160

3161 **Inferior name** the name assigned to the enrolling Inferior.

3162 **State Tables**

3163 The state tables deal with the state transitions of the Superior and Inferior roles and which
3164 message can be sent and received in each state. The state tables directly cover only a single, bi-
3165 lateral Superior:Inferior relationship. The interactions between, for example, multiple Inferiors of
3166 a single Superior that will apply the same decision to all or some (of them), are dealt with in the
3167 definitions of the “decision” events which also specify when changes are made to persistent state
3168 information (see below).

3169 There are two state tables, one for Superior, one for Inferior. States are identified by a letter-digit
3170 pair, with upper-case letters for the superior, lower-case for the inferior. The same letter is used to
3171 group states which have the same, or similar, persistent state, with the digit indicating volatile
3172 state changes or minor variations. Corresponding upper and lower-case letters are used to identify
3173 (approximately) corresponding Superior and Inferior states.

3174 The Inferior table includes events occurring both at the Inferior as such and at the associated
3175 Enroller, as the Enroller’s actions are constrained by and constrain the Inferior role itself.

3176 In the state tables, each side is either waiting to make a decision or can send a message. For some
3177 states, the message to be sent is a repetition of a regular message; for other states, the
3178 INFERIOR_STATE or SUPERIOR_STATE message can be sent, requesting a response.
3179 Normally, on entry to a state that allows the sending of any message other than one of the
3180 *_STATE messages, the implementation will send that message – failure to do so will cause the
3181 relationship to lock up. The message can be resent if the implementation determines that the
3182 original message (or the next message sent in reply) may have been lost.

3183 Status queries

3184 In BTP the messages SUPERIOR_STATE and INFERIOR_STATE are available to prompt the
3185 peer to report its current state by repeating the previous message (when this is allowed) or by
3186 sending the other *_STATE message. The “reply_requested” parameter of these messages
3187 distinguishes between their use as a prompt and as a reply. An implementation receiving a
3188 *_STATE message with “reply_requested” as “true” is not required to reply immediately – it may
3189 choose to delay any reply until a decision event occurs and then send the appropriate new
3190 message (e.g. on receiving INFERIOR_STATE/prepared/y while in state E1, a superior is
3191 permitted to delay until it has performed “decide to confirm” or “decide to cancel”). However,
3192 this may cause the other side to repeatedly send interrogatory *_STATE messages.

3193 Note that a Superior (or some entity standing in for a now-extinct Superior) uses
3194 SUPERIOR_STATE/unknown to reply to messages received from an Inferior where the
3195 Superior:Inferior relationship is in an unknown (using state “Y1”). The *_STATE messages with
3196 a “state” value “inaccessible” can be used as a reply when **any** message is received and the
3197 implementation is temporarily unable to determine whether the relationship is known or what the
3198 state is. Receipt of the *_STATE/inaccessible messages is not shown in the tables and has no
3199 effect on the state at the receiving side (though it may cause the implementation to resend its own
3200 message after some interval of its own choosing).

3201 Decision events

3202 The persistent state changes (equivalent to logging in a regular transaction system) and some
3203 other events are modelled as “decision events” (e.g. “decide to confirm”, “decide to be
3204 prepared”). The exact nature of the real events and changes in an implementation that are
3205 modelled by these events depends on the position of the Superior or Inferior within the business
3206 transaction and on features of the implementation (e.g. making of a persistent record of the
3207 decision means that the information will survive at least some failures that otherwise lose state
3208 information, but the level of survival depends on the purpose of the implementation). Table 3 and
3209 Table 4 define the decision events.

3210 The Superior event “decide to prepare” is considered semi-persistent. Since the sending of
3211 PREPARE indicates that the application exchange (to associate operations with the Inferior) is
3212 complete, it is not meaningful for the Superior:Inferior relationship to revert to an earlier state
3213 corresponding to an incomplete application exchange. However, implementations are not required
3214 to make the sending of PREPARE persistent in terms of recovery – a Superior that experiences
3215 failure after sending PREPARE may, on recovery, have no information about the transaction, in
3216 which case it is considered to be in the completed state (Z), which will imply the cancellation of
3217 the Inferior and its associated operations.

3218 Where a Superior is an Intermediate (i.e. is itself an Inferior to another Superior entity), in a
3219 transaction tree, its “decide to confirm” and “decide to cancel” decisions will in fact be the receipt
3220 of a CONFIRM or CANCEL instruction from its own Superior, without necessary change of local
3221 persistent information (which would combine both superior and inferior information, pointing
3222 both up and down the tree).

3223 Disruptions – failure events

3224 Failure events are modelled as “disruption”. A failure and the subsequent recovery will (or may)
3225 cause a change of state. The disruption events in the state tables model different extents of loss of
3226 state information. An implementation is **not** required to exhibit all the possible disruption events,
3227 but it is not allowed to exhibit state transitions that do not correspond to a possible disruption.
3228 The different levels of disruption describe legitimate states for the endpoint to be in after it has
3229 been restored to normal functioning. The absence of a destination state for the disruption events
3230 means that such a transition is not legitimate – thus, for example, an Inferior that has decided to
3231 be prepared will always recover to the same state, by virtue of the information persisted in the
3232 “decide to be prepared” event.

3233 In addition to the disruption events in the tables, there is an implicit “disruption 0” event, which
3234 involves possible interruption of service and loss of messages in transit, but no change of state
3235 (either because no state information was lost, or because recovery from persistent information
3236 restores the implementation to the same state). The “disruption 0” event would typically be an
3237 appropriate abstraction for a communication failure.

3238 Invalid cells and assumptions of the communication mechanism

3239 The empty cells in state table represent events that cannot happen. For events corresponding to
3240 sending a message or any of the decision events, this prohibition is absolute – e.g. a conformant
3241 implementation in the Superior active state “B1” will not send CONFIRM. For events
3242 corresponding to receiving a message, the interpretation depends on the properties of the
3243 underlying communications mechanism.

3244 For all communication mechanisms, it is assumed that

3245 a) the two directions of the Superior:Inferior communication are not synchronised –
3246 that is messages travelling in opposite directions can cross each other to any
3247 degree; any number of messages may be in transit in either direction; and

3248 b) messages may be lost arbitrarily

3249 If the communication mechanisms guarantee ordered delivery (i.e. that messages, if delivered at
3250 all, are delivered to the receiver in the order they were sent) , then receipt of a message in a state
3251 where the corresponding cell is empty indicates that the far-side has sent a message out of order –
3252 a FAULT message with the “fault-type” “WrongState” can be returned.

3253 If the communication mechanisms cannot guarantee ordered delivery, then messages received
3254 where the corresponding cell is empty should be ignored. Assuming the far-side is conformant,
3255 these messages can assumed to be “stale” and have been overtaken by messages sent later but
3256 already delivered. (If the far-side is non-conformant, there is a problem anyway).

3257 Meaning of state table events

3258 The tables in this section define the events (rows) in the state tables. Table 2 defines the events
3259 corresponding to sending or receiving BTP messages and the disruption events. Table 3 describes
3260 the decision events for an Inferior, Table 4 those for a Superior.

3261 The decision events for a Superior, defined in Table 4 cannot be specified without reference to
 3262 other Inferiors to which it is Superior and to its relation with the application or other entity that
 3263 (acting ultimately on behalf of the application) drives it.

3264 The term “remaining Inferiors” refers to any actors to which this endpoint is Superior and which
 3265 are to be treated as an atomic decision unit with (and thus including) the Inferior on this
 3266 relationship. If the CONTEXT for this Superior:Inferior relationship had a “superior-type” of
 3267 “atom”, this will be all Inferiors established with same Superior address and “superior-identifier”
 3268 except those from which RESIGN has been received. If the CONTEXT had “superior-type” of
 3269 “cohesion”, the “remaining Inferiors” excludes any that it has been determined will be cancelled,
 3270 as well as any that have resigned – in other words it includes only those for which a confirm
 3271 decision is still possible or has been made. The determination of exactly which Inferiors are
 3272 “remaining Inferiors” in a cohesion is determined, in some way, by the application. The term
 3273 “Other remaining Inferiors” excludes this Inferior on this relationship. A Superior with a single
 3274 Inferior will have no “other remaining Inferiors”.

3275 In order to ensure that the confirmation decision is delivered to all remaining Inferiors, despite
 3276 failures, the Superior must persistently record which these Inferiors are (i.e. their addresses and
 3277 identifiers). It must also either record that the decision is confirm, or ensure that the confirm
 3278 decision (if there is one) is persistently recorded somewhere else, and that it will be told about it.
 3279 This latter would apply if the Superior were also BTP Inferior to another entity which persisted a
 3280 confirm decision (or recursively deferred it still higher). However, since there is no requirement
 3281 that the Superior be also a BTP Inferior to any other entity, the behaviour of asking another entity
 3282 to make (and persist) the confirm decision is termed "offering confirmation" - the Superior offers
 3283 the possible confirmation of itself, and its remaining Inferiors to some other entity. If that entity
 3284 (or something higher up) then does make and persist a confirm decision, the Superior is
 3285 "instructed to confirm" (which is equivalent BTP CONFIRM).

3286 The application, or an entity acting indirectly on behalf of the application, may request a Superior
 3287 to prepare an Inferior (or all Inferiors). This typically implies that there will be no more
 3288 operations associated with the Inferior. Following a request to prepare all remaining Inferiors, the
 3289 Superior may offer confirmation to the entity that requested the prepare. (If the Superior is also a
 3290 BTP Inferior, its superior can be considered an entity acting on behalf of the application.)

3291 The application, or an entity acting indirectly on behalf of the application, may also request
 3292 confirmation. This means the Superior is to attempt to make and persist a confirm decision itself,
 3293 rather than offer confirmation.

3294 **Table 2 : send, receive and disruption events**

Event name	Meaning
send/receive ENROL/rsp-req	send/receive ENROL with response-requested = true
send/receive ENROL/no-rsp-req	send/receive ENROL with response-requested = false
send/receive RESIGN/rsp-req	send/receive RESIGN with response-requested = true
send/receive RESIGN/no-rsp-req	send/receive RESIGN with response-requested = false
send/receive PREPARED	send/receive PREPARED, with default-cancel = false

Event name	Meaning
send/receive PREPARED/cancel	send/receive PREPARED, with default-cancel = true
send/receive CONFIRMED/auto	send/receive CONFIRMED, with confirm-received = true
send/receive CONFIRMED/response	send/receive CONFIRMED, with confirm-received = false
send/receive HAZARD	send/receive HAZARD
send/receive INF_STATE/***/y	send/receive INFERIOR_STATE with status *** and response-requested = true
send/receive INF_STATE/***	send/receive INFERIOR_STATE with status *** and response-requested = false
send/receive SUP_STATE/***/y	send/receive SUPERIOR_STATE with status *** and response-requested = true ("prepared-rcvd" represents "prepared-received")
send/receive SUP_STATE/***	send/receive SUPERIOR_STATE with status *** and response-requested = false ("prepared-rcvd" represents "prepared-received")
disruption ***	Loss of state– new state is state applying after any local recovery processes complete

3295

3296

Table 3 : Decision events for Inferior

Event name	Meaning
decide to resign	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Any associated operations have had no effect (data state is unchanged)).
decide to be prepared	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Effects of all associated operations can be confirmed or cancelled; information to retain confirm/cancel ability has been made persistent
decide to be prepared/cancel	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> As "decide to be prepared"; the persistent information specifies that the default action will be to cancel
decide to confirm autonomously	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Decision to confirm autonomously has been made persistent; the effects of associated operations will be confirmed regardless of failures

Event name	Meaning
decide to cancel autonomously	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Decision to cancel autonomously has been made persistent the effects of associated operations will be cancelled regardless of failures
apply ordered confirmation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Effects of all associated operations have been confirmed; Persistent information is effectively removed
remove persistent information	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Persistent information is effectively removed;
detect problem	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> For at least some of the associated operations, EITHER <ul style="list-style-type: none"> they cannot be consistently cancelled or consistently confirmed; OR it cannot be determined whether they will be cancelled or confirmed AND, information about this is not persistent
detect and record problem	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> As for the first condition of "detect problem" information recording this has been persisted (to the degree considered appropriate), or the detection itself is persistent. (i.e. will be re-detected on recovery)

3297

3298

Table 4: Decision events for a Superior

Event name	Meaning
decide to confirm one-phase	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> All associated application messages to be sent to the service have been sent; There are no other remaining Inferiors If an atom, all enrolments that would create other Inferiors have completed (no outstanding CONTEXT_REPLYS) The Superior has been requested to confirm
decide to prepare	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> All associated application messages to be sent to the service have been sent; The Superior has been requested to prepare this Inferior
decide to confirm	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Either <ul style="list-style-type: none"> PREPARED or PREPARED/cancel has been received from all other remaining Inferiors; AND

Event name	Meaning
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> o Superior has been requested to confirm; AND o persistent information records the confirm decision and identifies all remaining Inferiors; • Or o persistent information records an offer of confirmation and has been instructed to confirm
decide to cancel	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Superior has not offered confirmation; OR • Superior has offered confirmation and has been instructed to cancel; OR • Superior has offered confirmation but has made an autonomous cancellation decision
remove confirm information	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Persistent information has been effectively removed;
record contradiction	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Information recording the contradiction has been persisted (to the degree considered appropriate)

3299

3300 Persistent information

3301 Persisted information (especially prepared information at an Inferior, confirm information at a
3302 Superior) may include qualifications of the state carried in Qualifiers of the corresponding
3303 message (e.g. inferior timeouts in prepared information). It may also include application-specific
3304 information (especially in Inferiors) to allow the future confirmation or cancellation of the
3305 associated operations. In some cases it will also include information allowing an application
3306 message sent with a BTP message (e.g. PREPARED) to be repeated.

3307 The “effective” removal of persistent information allows for the possibility that the information is
3308 retained (perhaps for audit and tracing purposes) but some change to the persistent information
3309 (as a whole) means that if there is a failure after such change, on recovery, the persistent
3310 information does not cause the endpoint to return the state it would have recovered to before the
3311 change.

3312 In all cases, the degree to which information described as “persistent” will survive failure is a
3313 configuration and implementation option. An implementation **should** describe the level of failure
3314 that it is capable of surviving. For applications manipulating information that is itself volatile (e.g.
3315 network configurations), there is no requirement to make the BTP state information more
3316 persistent than the application information.

3317 The degree of persistence of the recording of a hazard (problem) at an Inferior and recording of a
3318 detected contradiction at a Superior may be different from that applying to the persistent prepared
3319 and confirm information. Implementations and configuration may choose to pass hazard and
3320 contradiction information via management mechanisms rather than through BTP. Such passing of
3321 information to a management mechanism could be treated as “record problem” or “record
3322 contradiction”.

Table 5 : Superior states

State	summary
I1	CONTEXT created
A1	ENROLing
B1	ENROLLED (active)
B2	ENROLLED – repeat ENROL received
C1	resigning
D1	PREPARE sent
E1	PREPARED received
E2	PREPARED/cancel received
F1	CONFIRM sent
F2	completed after confirm
G1	cancel decided
G2	CANCEL sent
G3	cancelling, RESIGN received
G4	both cancelled
H1	inferior autonomously confirmed
J1	Inferior autonomously cancelled
K1	confirmed, contradiction detected
L1	cancelled, contradiction detected
P1	hazard reported
P2	hazard reported in null state
P3	hazard reported after confirm decision
P4	hazard reported after cancel decision
Q1	contradiction detected in null state
R1	Contradiction or hazard recorded
R2	completed after contradiction or hazard recorded
S1	one-phase confirm decided
Y1	completed queried
Z	completed and unknown

Table 6 : Inferior states

State	summary
i1	aware of CONTEXT
a1	enrolling
b1	enrolled
c1	resigning
d1	preparing
e1	prepared
e2	prepared,default to cancel
f1	confirming
f2	confirming after default cancel
g1	CANCEL received in prepared state
g2	CANCEL received in prepared/cancel state
h1	Autonomously confirmed
h2	autonomously confirmed, superior confirmed
j1	autonomously cancelled
j2	autonomously cancelled, superior cancelled
k1	autonomously cancelled, contradicted
k2	autonomously cancelled, CONTRADICTION received
l1	autonomously confirmed, contradicted
l2	autonomously confirmed, CONTRADICTION received
m1	confirmation applied
n1	cancelling
p1	hazard detected, not recorded
p2	hazard detected in prepared state, not recorded
q1	hazard recorded
s1	CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE received after prepared state
s2	CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE received
s3	CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE received, confirming
s4	CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE received, cancelling
s5	CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE received, hazard detected
s6	CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE received, hazard recorded
x1	completed, presuming abort
x2	completed, presuming abort after prepared/cancel
y1	completed, queried

State	summary
y2	completed, default cancel, a message received
z	completed
z1	completed with default cancel

3326

3327 Superior state table

3328 **Table 7: Superior state table – normal forward progression**

	I 1	A 1	B 1	B 2	C 1	D 1	E 1	E 2	F 1	F 2
recei ve ENROL/rsp-req	A1	A1	B2	B2		D1				
recei ve ENROL/no-rsp-req	B1		B1	B1		D1				
recei ve RESI GN/rsp-req	Y1		C1	C1	C1	C1				
recei ve RESI GN/no-rsp-req	Z		Z	Z	Z	Z				
recei ve PREPARED	Y1		E1	E1		E1	E1		F1	
recei ve PREPARED/cancel	Y1		E2	E2		E2		E2	F1	
recei ve CONFIR MED/auto	Q1		H1	H1		H1	H1		F1	
recei ve CONFIR MED/response									F2	F2
recei ve CANCELLED	Y1		Z	Z		Z	J1	J1	K1	
recei ve HAZARD	P1	P1	P1	P1		P1	P1	P1	P3	
recei ve INF_STATE/acti ve/y	Y1	A1	B1	B2		D1				
recei ve INF_STATE/acti ve			B1	B2		D1				
recei ve INF_STATE/unknown			Z	Z	Z	Z				
send ENROLLED		B1		B1						
send RESI GNED					Z					
send PREPARE						D1	E1	E2		
send CONFIR M_ONE_PHASE									F1	
send CONFIR M										
send CANCEL										
send CONTRADI CTI ON										
send SUP_STATE/acti ve/y			B1							
send SUP_STATE/acti ve			B1							
send SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd/y							E1	E2		
send SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd							E1	E2		
send SUP_STATE/unknown										
deci de to confi rm one-phase			S1	S1			S1	S1		
deci de to prepare			D1	D1						
deci de to confi rm							F1	F1		
deci de to cancel			G1	G1		G1	G1	Z		
remove persi stent i nformati on										Z
record contradi cti on										
di srupti on I	Z	Z	Z	Z	B1	Z	Z	Z		F1
di srupti on II					Z		D1	D1		
di srupti on III							B1	B1		
di srupti on IV										

3329

3330

Table 8: Superior state table – cancellation and contradiction

	G1	G2	G3	G4	H1	J1	K1	L1
recei ve ENROL/rsp-req	G1	G2						
recei ve ENROL/no-rsp-req	G1	G2						
recei ve RESI GN/rsp-req	G3	Z	G3					
recei ve RESI GN/no-rsp-req	Z	Z	Z					
recei ve PREPARED	G1	G2						
recei ve PREPARED/cancel	G1	G2						
recei ve CONFIR MED/auto	L1	L1			H1			L1
recei ve CONFIR MED/response								
recei ve CANCELLED	G4	Z		G4		J1	K1	
recei ve HAZARD	P4	P4						
recei ve INF_STATE/acti ve/y	G1	G2						
recei ve INF_STATE/acti ve	G1	G2						
recei ve INF_STATE/unknown	Z	Z	Z	Z				
send ENROLLED								
send RESI GNED								
send PREPARE								
send CONFIR M_ONE_PHASE								
send CONFIR M								
send CANCEL	G2	G2	Z	Z				
send CONTRADI CTI ON								
send SUP_STATE/acti ve/y								
send SUP_STATE/acti ve								
send SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd/y								
send SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd								
send SUP_STATE/unknown								
deci de to confi rm one-phase								
deci de to prepare					F1	K1		
deci de to confi rm					L1	G4		
deci de to cancel								
remove persi stent i nformati on							R1	R1
record contradi cti on								
di srupti on I	Z	Z	Z	Z	Z	Z	F1	Z
di srupti on II			G2	G2	E1	E1		G2
di srupti on III					D1	D1		
di srupti on IV					B1	B1		

3331

3332

3332

Table 9: Superior state table – hazard and request confirm

	P1	P2	P3	P4	Q1	R1	R2	S1
recei ve ENROL/rsp-req								S1
recei ve ENROL/no-rsp-req								S1
recei ve RESI GN/rsp-req								Z
recei ve RESI GN/no-rsp-req								Z
recei ve PREPARED								S1
recei ve PREPARED/cancel								S1
recei ve CONFIR MED/auto					Q1	R1	R1	S1
recei ve CONFIR MED/response					Z	R2	<u>R2</u>	Z
recei ve CANCELLED						R1	R1	Z
recei ve HAZARD	P1	P2	P3	P4		R1	R1	Z
recei ve INF_STATE/acti ve/y								S1
recei ve INF_STATE/acti ve								S1
recei ve INF_STATE/unknown	P1	P2		P4		R2	R2	Z
send ENROLLED								
send RESI GNED								
send PREPARE								
send CONFIR M_ONE_PHASE								S1
send CONFIR M								
send CANCEL								
send CONTRADI CTI ON						R2		
send SUP_STATE/acti ve/y								
send SUP_STATE/acti ve								
send SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd/y								
send SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd								
send SUP_STATE/unknown								
deci de to confi rm one-phase								
deci de to prepare								
deci de to confi rm								
deci de to cancel								
remove persi stent i nformati on							Z	
record contradi cti on	R1	R1	R1	R1	R1			
di srupti on I	Z	Z	Z	Z	Z		R1	Z
di srupti on II	D1		F1	G2				
di srupti on III	B1							
di srupti on IV								

3333

3334

3334

Table 10: Superior state table – query after completion and completed states

	Y1	Z
recei ve ENROL/rsp-req	Y1	Y1
recei ve ENROL/no-rsp-req	Y1	Y1
recei ve RESI GN/rsp-req	Y1	Y1
recei ve RESI GN/no-rsp-req	Z	Z
recei ve PREPARED	Y1	Y1
recei ve PREPARED/cancel	Y1	Y1
recei ve CONFIR MED/auto	Q1	Q1
recei ve CONFIR MED/response	Z	Z
recei ve CANCELLED	Y1	Y1
recei ve HAZARD	P2	P2
recei ve INF_STATE/acti ve/y	Y1	Y1
recei ve INF_STATE/acti ve	Y1	Z
recei ve INF_STATE/unknown	Z	Z
send ENROLLED		
send RESI GNED		
send PREPARE		
send CONFIR M_ONE_PHASE		
send CONFIR M		
send CANCEL		
send CONTRADI CTI ON		
send SUP_STATE/acti ve/y		
send SUP_STATE/acti ve		
send SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd/y		
send SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd		
send SUP_STATE/unknown	Z	
deci de to confi rm one-phase		
deci de to prepare		
deci de to confi rm		
deci de to cancel		
remove persi stent i nformati on		
record contradi cti on		
di srupti on I	Z	
di srupti on II		
di srupti on III		
di srupti on IV		

3335

3336

3336 Inferior state table

3337 **Table 11: Inferior state table – normal forward progression**

	i 1	a1	b1	c1	d1	e1	e2	f1	f2
send ENROL/rsp-req	a1	a1							
send ENROL/no-rsp-req	b1		b1						
send RESI GN/rsp-req				c1					
send RESI GN/no-rsp-req				z					
send PREPARED						e1			
send PREPARED/cancel							e2		
send CONFIR MED/auto									
send CONFIR MED/response									
send CANCELLED			z		z				
send HAZARD									
send INF_STATE/active/y		a1	b1		d1				
send INF_STATE/active			b1		d1				
send INF_STATE/unknown									
recei ve ENROLLED		b1	b1	c1		e1	e2		
recei ve RESI GNED				z					
recei ve PREPARE		d1	d1	c1	d1	e1	e2		
recei ve CONFIR M_ONE_PHASE		s2	s2	z		s1	s1		
recei ve CONFIR M						f1	f2	f1	f2
recei ve CANCEL		n1	n1	z	n1	g1	g2		
recei ve CONTRADI CTI ON									
recei ve SUP_STATE/active/y		b1	b1	c1		e1	e2		
recei ve SUP_STATE/active		b1	b1	c1		e1	e2		
recei ve SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd/y						e1	e2		
recei ve SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd						e1	e2		
recei ve SUP_STATE/unknown		z	z	z	z	x1	x2		
deci de to resi gn			c1		c1				
deci de to be prepared			e1		e1				
deci de to be prepared/cancel			e2		e2				
deci de to confi rm autonomously						h1			
deci de to cancel autonomously						j 1	z1		
apply ordered confi rmation								m1	m1
remove persi stent i nformati on									
detect probl em		p1	p1		p1	p2	p2	p2	p2
detect and record probl em									
di srupti on I		z	z	z	z			e1	e2
di srupti on II					b1				
di srupti on III									

3338

3339

Table 12: Inferior state table – cancellation and contradiction

	g1	g2	h1	h2	j1	j2	k1	k2	l1	l2
send ENROL/rsp-req send ENROL/no-rsp-req send RESIGN/rsp-req send RESIGN/no-rsp-req send PREPARED send PREPARED/cancel send CONFIRMED/auto send CONFIRMED/response send CANCELLED send HAZARD			h1		j1		k1		l1	
send INF_STATE/active/y send INF_STATE/active send INF_STATE/unknown										
receive ENROLLED receive RESIGNED receive PREPARE receive CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE receive CONFIRM receive CANCEL receive CONTRADICTION	g1	g2	h1 h1 h2	h2	j1 j1 k1	j2	k1 k2	k2	l1 l2	l2
receive SUP_STATE/active/y receive SUP_STATE/active receive SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd/y receive SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd receive SUP_STATE/unknown	x1	x2	h1 h1 h1 h1		j1 j1 j1 j1	j2	k2	k2	l1	
decide to resign decide to be prepared decide to be prepared/cancel decide to confirm autonomously decide to cancel autonomously apply ordered confirmation remove persistent information detect problem detect and record problem	n1	n1		m1		z		z		z
disruption I disruption II disruption III	e1	e2	h1		j1		j1	k1 j1	h1	l1 h1

3340

3341

3341

Table 13: Inferior state table – confirm, cancel ordered and hazard recording

	m1	n1	p1	p2	q1
send ENROL/rsp-req send ENROL/no-rsp-req send RESIGN/rsp-req send RESIGN/no-rsp-req send PREPARED send PREPARED/cancel send CONFIRMED/auto send CONFIRMED/response send CANCELLED send HAZARD	z	z	p1	p2	q1
send INF_STATE/active/y send INF_STATE/active send INF_STATE/unknown					
receive ENROLLED receive RESIGNED receive PREPARE receive CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE receive CONFIRM receive CANCEL receive CONTRADICTION	m1	n1	p1 s5 z	p2 s5 z	q1 s6 q1 z
receive SUP_STATE/active/y receive SUP_STATE/active receive SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd/y receive SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd receive SUP_STATE/unknown		z	p1 p1 p1	p2 p2 p2	q1 q1 q1 q1
decide to resign decide to be prepared decide to be prepared/cancel decide to confirm autonomously decide to cancel autonomously apply ordered confirmation remove persistent information detect problem detect and record problem			q1	q1	
disruption I disruption II disruption III	z	z d1 b1	z		

3342

3343

Table 14: Inferior state table – request confirm states

	s1	s2	s3	s4	s5	s6
send ENROL/rsp-req send ENROL/no-rsp-req send RESI GN/rsp-req send RESI GN/no-rsp-req send PREPARED send PREPARED/cancel send CONFIR MED/auto send CONFIR MED/response send CANCELLED send HAZARD			z	z	z	z
send INF_STATE/active/y send INF_STATE/active send INF_STATE/unknown						
recei ve ENROLLED recei ve RESI GNED recei ve PREPARE recei ve CONFIR M_ONE_PHASE recei ve CONFIR M recei ve CANCEL recei ve CONTRADI CTI ON	s1	s2	s3	s4	s5	s6
recei ve SUP_STATE/active/y recei ve SUP_STATE/active recei ve SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd/y recei ve SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd recei ve SUP_STATE/unknown	x1	z	z	z	z	z
deci de to resi gn deci de to be prepared deci de to be prepared/cancel deci de to confi rm autonomously deci de to cancel autonomously appl y ordered confi rmati on remove persi stent i nformati on detect probl em detect and record probl em	s2		s3 s4			s6
di srupti on I di srupti on II di srupti on III	e1	z		z	z	

3345

Table 15: Inferior state table – completed states (including presume-abort and queried)

	x1	x2	y1	y2	z	z1
send ENROL/rsp-req send ENROL/no-rsp-req send RESI GN/rsp-req send RESI GN/no-rsp-req send PREPARED send PREPARED/cancel send CONFIR MED/auto send CONFIR MED/response send CANCELLED send HAZARD						z1
send INF_STATE/active/y send INF_STATE/active send INF_STATE/unknown			z			
recei ve ENROLLED recei ve RESI GNED recei ve PREPARE recei ve CONFIR M_ONE_PHASE recei ve CONFIR M recei ve CANCEL recei ve CONTRADI CTI ON			y1 y1 y1 y1 y1 y1 z	y2 y2 y2 y2 z z	z z y1 y1 m1 y1 z	z1 z1 y1 y2 y1 y1 z
recei ve SUP_STATE/active/y recei ve SUP_STATE/active recei ve SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd/y recei ve SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd recei ve SUP_STATE/unknown			y1 y1 x1	y2 y2 y2 y2 x2	y1 z y2 z	y2 z1 y2 y2 z
deci de to resi gn deci de to be prepared deci de to be prepared/cancel deci de to confi rm autonomously deci de to cancel autonomously appl y ordered confi rmati on remove persi stent i nformati on detect probl em detect and record probl em						
di srupti on I di srupti on II di srupti on III	e1	e2				

3346

3347

3347 **Persistent information**

3348 The BTP recovery mechanisms require that information is persisted by the BTP actors that
3349 perform the Superior and Inferior roles. To ensure consistent application of the outcome, despite
3350 failures, the Inferior must persist some state information at the point of becoming prepared, and
3351 the Superior at the point of making a confirm decision. If the Superior is a Sub-coordinator or
3352 Sub-composer, it must persist information when, as an Inferior it becomes prepared. The
3353 minimum information to be persisted is the identifiers and addresses of the peer Inferiors and
3354 Superior – the fact of the persistence being itself an indication of the preparedness or confirm
3355 decision. However, BTP allows recovery of a Superior:Inferior relationship to occur in other
3356 cases – during the active phase, and before a confirm decision has been made. Thus, in general,
3357 the BTP actors will need to persist the current state of the relationships.

3358 Since BTP messages may carry application-specified qualifiers, which may need to be re-sent in
3359 the case of failure (because the first attempt got lost). BTP actors should be prepared to persist
3360 such qualifiers as well.

3361 A Participant will normally also need to persist some information concerning the application
3362 work whose final or counter effect it is responsible for. The nature of this information is not
3363 considered further in this specification.

3364 Information to be persisted for an Inferior’s “decision to be prepared” must be sufficient to re-
3365 establish communication with the Superior, to apply a confirm decision and to apply a cancel
3366 decision. It will thus need to include

3367 “superior-address”(as on CONTEXT as updated by REDIRECT)

3368 “superior-identifier” (as on CONTEXT)

3369 “default-is-cancel” value (as on PREPARED)

3370 A Superior must record corresponding information to allow it to re-establish communication with
3371 the Inferior. Thus, for each Inferior

3372 “inferior-address” (as on ENROL, as updated by REDIRECT)

3373 “inferior-identifier” (as on ENROL)

3374 In order to recover their own function, both Superior and Inferior will need to persist their own
3375 Identifier (“superior-identifier” and “inferior-identifier”) and, depending on the implementation,
3376 may need to persist their original “superior-address” or “inferior-address”.

3377 **XML representation of Message Set**

3378 This section describes the syntax for BTP messages in XML. These XML messages represent a
3379 midpoint between the abstract messages and what actually gets sent on the wire.

3380 All BTP related URIs have been created using Oasis URI conventions as specified in [RFC 3121](#)

3381 The XML Namespace for the BTP messages is urn:oasis:names:tc:BTP:1.0:core

3382 In addition to an XML schema, this specification uses an informal syntax to describe the structure
3383 of the BTP messages. The syntax appears as an XML instance, but the values contain data types
3384 instead of values. The following symbols are appended to some of the XML constructs: ? (zero
3385 or one), * (zero or more), + (one or more.) The absence of one of these symbols corresponds to
3386 "one and only one."

3387 The Delivery parameters are shown in the XML with a darker background.

3388 Addresses

3389 As described in the “Abstract Message and Associated Contracts – Addresses” section, a BTP
3390 address comprises three parts, and for a “target-address” only the “additional information” field is
3391 inside the BTP messages. For all BTP messages whose abstract form includes a “target-address”
3392 parameter, the corresponding XML representation includes a “target-additional-information”
3393 element. This element may be omitted if it would be empty.

3394 For other addresses, all three fields are represent, as in:

```
3395 <btp:some-address>  
3396   <btp:binding-name>...carrier binding URI...</btp:binding-name>  
3397   <btp:binding-address>...carrier specific  
3398   address...</btp:binding-address>  
3399   <btp:additional-information>...optional additional addressing  
3400   information...</btp:additional-information> ?  
3401 </btp:some-address>  
3402
```

3403 A "published" address can be a set of <some-address>, which are alternatives which can be
3404 chosen by the peer (sender.) Multiple addresses are used in two cases: different bindings to same
3405 endpoint, or backup endpoints. In the former, the receiver of the message has the choice of which
3406 address to use (depending on which binding is preferable.) In the case where multiple addresses
3407 are used for redundancy, a priority attribute can be specified to help the receiver choose among
3408 the addresses- the address with the highest priority should be used, other things being equal. The
3409 priority is used as a hint and does not enforce any behaviour in the receiver of the message.
3410 Default priority is a value of 1.

3411 Qualifiers

3412 The “Qualifier name” is used as the element name, within the namespace of the “Qualifier
3413 group”.

3414 Examples:

```
3415 <btpq:inferior-timeout  
3416   xmlns:btpq="urn:oasis:names:tc:BTP:1.0:qualifiers"  
3417   xmlns:btp="urn:oasis:names:tc:BTP:1.0:core"  
3418   btp:must-be-understood="false"  
3419   btp:to-be-propagated="false">1800</btpq:inferior-timeout>  
3420 <auth:username  
3421   xmlns:auth="http://www.example.com/ns/auth"  
3422   xmlns:btp="urn:oasis:names:tc:BTP:1.0:core"
```

```
3423         btp:must-be-understood="true"
3424         btp:to-be-propagated="true">jtauber</auth:username>
3425
3426 Attributes must-be-understood has default value “true” and to-be-propagated has default value
3427 “false”.
```

3428 Identifiers

3429 Identifiers shall be URIs "

3430 *Note – Identifiers need to be globally unambiguous. Apart from their generation, .the*
3431 *only operation the BTP implementations have to perform on identifiers is to match*
3432 *them.*

3433 Message References

3434 Each BTP message has an optional id attribute to give it a unique identifier. An application can
3435 make use of those identifiers, but no processing is enforced.

3436 Messages

3437 CONTEXT

```
3438 <btp:context id?>
3439   <btp:superior-address> +
3440     ...address...
3441 </btp:superior-address>
3442 <btp:superior-identifier>...URI...</btp:superior-identifier>
3443 <btp:superior-type>cohesion|atom</btp:superior-type>
3444 <btp:qualifiers> ?
3445   ...qualifiers...
3446 </btp:qualifiers>
3447 <btp:reply-address> ?
3448   ...address...
3449 </btp:reply-address>
3450 </btp:context>
```

3451 CONTEXT_REPLY

```
3452 <btp:context-reply id?>
3453   <btp:superior-identifier>...URI...</btp:superior-identifier>
3454   <btp:completion-
3455 status>completed|incomplete|related|repudiated</btp:completion-
3456 status>
3457   <btp:qualifiers> ?
3458     ...qualifiers...
3459 </btp:qualifiers>
3460 <btp:target-additional-information> ?
3461   ...additional address information...
3462 </btp:target-additional-information>
3463 </btp:context-reply>
```

3464 REQUEST_STATUS

```
3465 <btpr:request-status id?>
3466   <btpr:target-identifier>...URI...</btpr:target-identifier>
3467   <btpr:qualifiers> ?
3468   ...qualifiers...
3469 </btpr:qualifiers>
3470 <btpr:target-additional-information> ?
3471   ...additional address information...
3472 </btpr:target-additional-information>
3473 <btpr:reply-address> ?
3474   ...address...
3475 </btpr:reply-address>
3476 </btpr:request-status>
```

3477 STATUS

```
3478 <btpr:status id?>
3479   <btpr:responders-identifier>...URI...</btpr:responders-identifier>
3480   <btpr:status-value>created|enrolling|active|resigning|
3481     resigned|preparing|prepared|
3482     confirming|confirmed|cancelling|cancelled|
3483     cancel-contradiction|confirm-contradiction|
3484     hazard|contradicted|unknown|inaccessible</btpr:status-
3485 value>
3486   <btpr:qualifiers> ?
3487   ...qualifiers...
3488 </btpr:qualifiers>
3489 <btpr:target-additional-information> ?
3490   ...additional address information...
3491 </btpr:target-additional-information>
3492 </btpr:status>
```

3493 FAULT

```
3494 <btpr:fault id?>
3495   <btpr:superior-identifier>...URI...</btpr:superior-identifier> ?
3496   <btpr:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btpr:inferior-identifier> ?
3497   <btpr:fault-type>...fault type name...</btpr:fault-type>
3498   <btpr:fault-data>...fault data...</btpr:fault-data> ?
3499   <btpr:fault-text>...string data ...</btpr:fault-data> ?
3500   <btpr:qualifiers> ?
3501   ...qualifiers...
3502 </btpr:qualifiers>
3503 <btpr:target-additional-information> ?
3504   ...additional address information...
3505 </btpr:target-additional-information>
3506 </btpr:fault>
3507
```

3508 The following fault type names are represented by simple strings, corresponding to the entries
3509 defined in the abstract message set:

- 3510 • communication-failure
- 3511 • duplicate-inferior
- 3512 • general
- 3513 • invalid-decider
- 3514 • invalid-inferior
- 3515 • invalid-superior
- 3516 • status-refused
- 3517 • invalid-terminator
- 3518 • unknown-parameter
- 3519 • unknown-transaction
- 3520 • unsupported-qualifier
- 3521 • wrong-state
- 3522 • redirect
- 3523

3524 Revisions of this specification may add other fault type names, which shall be simple strings of
 3525 letters, numbers and hyphens. If other specifications define fault type names to be used with BTP,
 3526 the names shall be URIs.

3527 Fault data can take on various forms:

3528 Identifier:

```
3529 <btp: fault-data>...URI...</btp: fault-data>
```

3531 Inferior Identity:

```
3532 <btp: fault-data>
3533 <btp: inferior-address> +
3534 ...address...
3535 </btp: inferior-address>
3536 <btp: inferior-identifier>...URI...</btp: inferior-identifier>
3537 </btp: fault-data>
```

3539 **ENROL**

```
3540 <btp: enrol id?>
3541 <btp: superior-identifier>...URI...</btp: superior-identifier>
3542 <btp: response-requested>true| false</btp: response-requested>
3543 <btp: inferior-address> +
3544 ...address...
3545 </btp: inferior-address>
3546 <btp: inferior-identifier>...URI...</btp: inferior-identifier>
3547 <btp: qualifiers> ?
3548 ...qualifiers...
```

```
3549     </btp:qualifiers>
3550     <btp:target-additional-information> ?
3551         ...additional address information...
3552     </btp:target-additional-information>
3553     <btp:reply-address> ?
3554         ...address...
3555     </btp:reply-address>
3556 </btp:enrol>
```

3557 ENROLLED

```
3558 <btp:enrolled id?>
3559     <btp:sender-address> ?
3560         ...address...
3561     </btp:sender-address>
3562     <btp:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btp:inferior-identifier>
3563     <btp:qualifiers> ?
3564         ...qualifiers...
3565     </btp:qualifiers>
3566     <btp:target-additional-information> ?
3567         ...additional address information...
3568     </btp:target-additional-information>
3569 </btp:enrolled>
```

3570 RESIGN

```
3571 <btp:resign id?>
3572     <btp:superior-identifier>...URI...</btp:superior-identifier>
3573     <btp:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btp:inferior-identifier>
3574     <btp:response-requested>true|false</btp:response-requested>
3575     <btp:qualifiers> ?
3576         ...qualifiers...
3577     </btp:qualifiers>
3578     <btp:target-additional-information> ?
3579         ...additional address information...
3580     </btp:target-additional-information>
3581     <btp:sender-address> ?
3582         ...address...
3583     </btp:sender-address>
3584 </btp:resign>
```

3585 RESIGNED

```
3586 <btp:resigned id?>
3587     <btp:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btp:inferior-identifier>
3588     <btp:qualifiers> ?
3589         ...qualifiers...
3590     </btp:qualifiers>
3591     <btp:target-additional-information> ?
3592         ...additional address information...
3593     </btp:target-additional-information>
3594     <btp:sender-address> ?
3595         ...address...
3596     </btp:sender-address>
```

3597 </btp:resigned>

3598 PREPARE

```
3599 <btp:prepare id?>
3600 <btp:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btp:inferior-identifier>
3601 <btp:qualifiers> ?
3602 ...qualifiers...
3603 </btp:qualifiers>
3604 <btp:target-additional-information> ?
3605 ...additional address information...
3606 </btp:target-additional-information>
3607 <btp:sender-address> ?
3608 ...address...
3609 </btp:sender-address>
3610 </btp:prepare>
```

3611 PREPARED

```
3612 <btp:prepared id?>
3613 <btp:superior-identifier>...URI...</btp:superior-identifier>
3614 <btp:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btp:inferior-identifier>
3615 <btp:default-is-cancel>true|false</btp:default-is-cancel>
3616 <btp:qualifiers> ?
3617 ...qualifiers...
3618 </btp:qualifiers>
3619 <btp:target-additional-information> ?
3620 ...additional address information...
3621 </btp:target-additional-information>
3622 <btp:sender-address> ?
3623 ...address...
3624 </btp:sender-address>
3625 </btp:prepared>
```

3626 CONFIRM

```
3627 <btp:confirm id?>
3628 <btp:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btp:inferior-identifier>
3629 <btp:qualifiers> ?
3630 ...qualifiers...
3631 </btp:qualifiers>
3632 <btp:target-additional-information> ?
3633 ...additional address information...
3634 </btp:target-additional-information>
3635 <btp:sender-address> ?
3636 ...address...
3637 </btp:sender-address>
3638 </btp:confirm>
```

3639 CONFIRMED

```
3640 <btp:confirmed id?>
3641 <btp:superior-identifier>...URI...</btp:superior-identifier>
3642 <btp:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btp:inferior-identifier>
```

```
3643 <ctp:confirmed-received>true|false</ctp:confirmed-received>
3644 <ctp:qualifiers> ?
3645   ...qualifiers...
3646 </ctp:qualifiers>
3647 <ctp:target-additional-information> ?
3648   ...additional address information...
3649 </ctp:target-additional-information>
3650 <ctp:sender-address> ?
3651   ...address...
3652 </ctp:sender-address>
3653 </ctp:confirmed>
```

3654 CANCEL

```
3655 <ctp:cancel id?>
3656 <ctp:inferior-identifier>...URI...</ctp:inferior-identifier>
3657 <ctp:qualifiers> ?
3658   ...qualifiers...
3659 </ctp:qualifiers>
3660 <ctp:target-additional-information> ?
3661   ...additional address information...
3662 </ctp:target-additional-information>
3663 <ctp:sender-address> ?
3664   ...address...
3665 </ctp:sender-address>
3666 </ctp:cancel>
```

3667 CANCELLED

```
3668 <ctp:cancelled id?>
3669 <ctp:superior-identifier>...URI...</ctp:superior-identifier>
3670 <ctp:inferior-identifier>...URI...</ctp:inferior-identifier> ?
3671 <ctp:qualifiers> ?
3672   ...qualifiers...
3673 </ctp:qualifiers>
3674 <ctp:target-additional-information> ?
3675   ...additional address information...
3676 </ctp:target-additional-information>
3677 <ctp:sender-address> ?
3678   ...address...
3679 </ctp:sender-address>
3680 </ctp:cancelled>
```

3681 CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE

```
3682 <ctp:confirm-one-phase id?>
3683 <ctp:inferior-identifier>...URI...</ctp:inferior-identifier>
3684 <ctp:report-hazard>true|false</ctp:report-hazard>
3685 <ctp:qualifiers> ?
3686   ...qualifiers...
3687 </ctp:qualifiers>
3688 <ctp:target-additional-information> ?
3689   ...additional address information...
3690 </ctp:target-additional-information>
```

```
3691 <btpt:sender-address> ?
3692 ...address...
3693 </btpt:sender-address>
3694 </btpt:confirm-one-phase>
```

3695 HAZARD

```
3696 <btpt:hazard id?>
3697 <btpt:superior-identifier>...URI...</btpt:superior-identifier>
3698 <btpt:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btpt:inferior-identifier>
3699 <btpt:level>mixed|possible</btpt:level>
3700 <btpt:qualifiers> ?
3701 ...qualifiers...
3702 </btpt:qualifiers>
3703 <btpt:target-additional-information> ?
3704 ...additional address information...
3705 </btpt:target-additional-information>
3706 <btpt:sender-address> ?
3707 ...address...
3708 </btpt:sender-address>
3709 </btpt:hazard>
```

3710 CONTRADICTION

```
3711 <btpt:contradiction id?>
3712 <btpt:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btpt:inferior-identifier>
3713 <btpt:qualifiers> ?
3714 ...qualifiers...
3715 </btpt:qualifiers>
3716 <btpt:target-additional-information> ?
3717 ...additional address information...
3718 </btpt:target-additional-information>
3719 <btpt:sender-address> ?
3720 ...address...
3721 </btpt:sender-address>
3722 </btpt:contradiction>
```

3723 SUPERIOR_STATE

```
3724 <btpt:superior-state id?>
3725 <btpt:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btpt:inferior-identifier>
3726 <btpt:status>active|prepared-
3727 received|inaccessible|unknown</btpt:status>
3728 <btpt:response-requested>true|false</btpt:response-requested>
3729 <btpt:qualifiers> ?
3730 ...qualifiers...
3731 </btpt:qualifiers>
3732 <btpt:target-additional-information> ?
3733 ...additional address information...
3734 </btpt:target-additional-information>
3735 <btpt:sender-address> ?
3736 ...address...
3737 </btpt:sender-address>
3738 </btpt:superior-state>
```

3739 **INFERIOR_STATE**

```
3740 <btpt:inferior-state id?>
3741 <btpt:superior-identifier>...URI...</btpt:superior-identifier>
3742 <btpt:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btpt:inferior-identifier>
3743 <btpt:status>active|inaccessible|unknown</btpt:status>
3744 <btpt:response-requested>true|false</btpt:response-requested>
3745 <btpt:qualifiers> ?
3746 ...qualifiers...
3747 </btpt:qualifiers>
3748 <btpt:target-additional-information> ?
3749 ...additional address information...
3750 </btpt:target-additional-information>
3751 <btpt:sender-address> ?
3752 ...address...
3753 </btpt:sender-address>
3754 </btpt:inferior-state>
```

3755 **REDIRECT**

```
3756 <btpt:redirect id?>
3757 <btpt:superior-identifier>...URI...</btpt:superior-identifier> ?
3758 <btpt:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btpt:inferior-identifier>
3759 <btpt:old-address> +
3760 ...address...
3761 </btpt:old-address>
3762 <btpt:new-address> +
3763 ...address...
3764 </btpt:new-address>
3765 <btpt:qualifiers> ?
3766 ...qualifiers...
3767 </btpt:qualifiers>
3768 <btpt:target-additional-information> ?
3769 ...additional address information...
3770 </btpt:target-additional-information>
3771 </btpt:redirect>
```

3772 **BEGIN**

```
3773 <btpt:begin id?>
3774 <btpt:transaction-type>cohesion|atom</btpt:transaction-type>
3775 <btpt:qualifiers> ?
3776 ...qualifiers...
3777 </btpt:qualifiers>
3778 <btpt:target-additional-information> ?
3779 ...additional address information...
3780 </btpt:target-additional-information>
3781 <btpt:reply-address> ?
3782 ...address...
3783 </btpt:reply-address>
3784 </btpt:begin>
```

3785 **BEGUN**

```
3786 <btp:begin id?>
3787   <btp:decider-address> *
3788     ...address...
3789   </btp:decider-address>
3790   <btp:inferior-address> *
3791     ...address...
3792   </btp:inferior-address>
3793   <btp:transaction-identifier>...URI...</btp:transaction-
3794 identifier>
3795   <btp:qualifiers> ?
3796     ...qualifiers...
3797   </btp:qualifiers>
3798   <btp:target-additional-information> ?
3799     ...additional address information...
3800   </btp:target-additional-information>
3801 </btp:begin>
```

3802 **PREPARE_INFERIORS**

```
3803 <btp:prepare-inferiors id?>
3804   <btp:transaction-identifier>...URI...</btp:transaction-
3805 identifier>
3806   <btp:inferiors-list> ?
3807     <btp:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btp:inferior-
3808 identifier> +
3809   </btp:inferiors-list>
3810   <btp:qualifiers> ?
3811     ...qualifiers...
3812   </btp:qualifiers>
3813   <btp:target-additional-information> ?
3814     ..additional address information...
3815   </btp:target-additional-information>
3816   <btp:reply-address> ?
3817     ...address...
3818   </btp:reply-address>
3819 </btp:prepare-inferiors>
```

3820 **CONFIRM_TRANSACTION**

```
3821 <btp:confirm-transaction id?>
3822   <btp:transaction-identifier>...URI...</btp:transaction-
3823 identifier>
3824   <btp:inferiors-list> ?
3825     <btp:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btp:inferior-
3826 identifier> +
3827   </btp:inferiors-list>
3828   <btp:report-hazard>true|false</btp:report-hazard>
3829   <btp:qualifiers> ?
3830     ...qualifiers...
3831   </btp:qualifiers>
3832   <btp:target-additional-information> ?
3833     ...additional address information...
```

```
3834     </btp:target-additional-information>
3835     <btp:reply-address> ?
3836         ...address...
3837     </btp:reply-address>
3838 </btp:confirm_transaction>
```

3839 TRANSACTION_CONFIRMED

```
3840 <btp:transaction-confirmed id?>
3841     <btp:transaction-identifier>...URI...</btp:transaction-
3842     identifier>
3843     <btp:qualifiers> ?
3844         ...qualifiers...
3845     </btp:qualifiers>
3846     <btp:target-additional-information> ?
3847         ...additional address information...
3848     </btp:target-additional-information>
3849 </btp:transaction-confirmed>
```

3850 CANCEL_TRANSACTION

```
3851 <btp:cancel-transaction id?>
3852     <btp:transaction-identifier>...URI...</btp:transaction-
3853     identifier>
3854     <btp:report-hazard>true|false</btp:report-hazard>
3855     <btp:qualifiers> ?
3856         ...qualifiers...
3857     </btp:qualifiers>
3858     <btp:target-additional-information> ?
3859         ...additional address information...
3860     </btp:target-additional-information>
3861     <btp:reply-address> ?
3862         ...address...
3863     </btp:reply-address>
3864 </btp:cancel-transaction>
```

3865 CANCEL_INFERIORS

```
3866 <btp:cancel-inferiors id?>
3867     <btp:transaction-identifier>...URI...</btp:transaction-
3868     identifier> ?
3869     <btp:inferiors-list>
3870         <btp:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btp:inferior-identifier> +
3871     </btp:inferiors-list>
3872     <btp:qualifiers> ?
3873         ...qualifiers...
3874     </btp:qualifiers>
3875     <btp:target-additional-information> ?
3876         ...additional address information...
3877     </btp:target-additional-information>
3878     <btp:reply-address> ?
3879         ...address...
3880     </btp:reply-address>
3881 </btp:cancel-inferiors>
```

3882 TRANSACTION_CANCELLED

```
3883 <btpt:transaction-cancelled id?>
3884   <btpt:transaction-identifier>...URI...</btpt:transaction-
3885   identifier>
3886   <btpt:qualifiers> ?
3887     ...qualifiers...
3888   </btpt:qualifiers>
3889   <btpt:target-additional-information> ?
3890     ...additional address information...
3891   </btpt:target-additional-information>
3892 </btpt:transaction-cancelled>
```

3893 REQUEST_INFERIOR_STATUSES

```
3894 <btpt:request-inferior-statuses id?>
3895   <btpt:target-identifier>...URI...</btpt:target-identifier>
3896   <btpt:inferiors-list> ?
3897     <btpt:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btpt:inferior-
3898   identifier> +
3899   </btpt:inferiors-list>
3900   <btpt:qualifiers> ?
3901     ...qualifiers...
3902   </btpt:qualifiers>
3903   <btpt:target-additional-information> ?
3904     ...additional address information...
3905   </btpt:target-additional-information>
3906   <btpt:reply-address> ?
3907     ...address...
3908   </btpt:reply-address>
3909 </btpt:request-inferior-statuses>
```

3910 INFERIOR_STATUSES

```
3911 <btpt:inferior-statuses id?>
3912   <btpt:responders-identifier>...URI...</btpt:responders-identifier>
3913   <btpt:status-list>
3914     <btpt:status-item> +
3915       <btpt:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btpt:inferior-
3916   identifier>
3917       <btpt:status>active|resigned|preparing|prepared|
3918       autonomously-confirmed|autonomously-cancelled|
3919       confirming|confirmed|cancelling|cancelled|
3920       cancel-contradiction|confirm-contradiction|
3921       hazard|invalid</btpt:status>
3922     <btpt:qualifiers> ?
3923       ...qualifiers...
3924     </btpt:qualifiers>
3925   </btpt:status-item>
3926 </btpt:status-list>
3927   <btpt:qualifiers> ?
3928     ...qualifiers...
3929   </btpt:qualifiers>
3930   <btpt:target-additional-information> ?
```

```
3931     ...additional address information...
3932     </btp:target-additional-information>
3933 </btp:inferior-statuses>
```

3934 **Standard qualifiers**

3935 The informal syntax for these messages assumes the namespace prefix “btpq” is associated with
3936 the URI “urn:oasis:names:tc:BTP:1.0:qualifiers”.

3937 **Transaction timelimit**

```
3938     <btpq:transaction-timelimit>
3939     <btpq:timelimit>
3940     ...time in seconds...
3941     </btpq:timelimit>
3942 </btpq:transaction-timelimit>
```

3943 **Inferior timeout**

```
3944     <btpq:inferior-timeout>
3945     <btpq:timeout>
3946     ...time in seconds...
3947     </btpq:timeout>
3948     <btpq:intended-decision>confirm|cancel</btpq:intended-decision>
3949 </btpq:inferior-timeout>
```

3950 **Minimum inferior timeout**

```
3951     <btpq:minimum-inferior-timeout>
3952     <btpq:minimum-timeout>
3953     ...time in seconds...
3954     </btpq:minimum-timeout>
3955 </btpq:minimum-inferior-timeout>
```

3956 **Inferior name**

```
3957     <btpq:inferior-name>
3958     <btpq:inferior-name>
3959     ...string...
3960     </btpq:inferior-name>
3961 </btpq:inferior-name>
```

3962 **Compounding of Messages**

3963 Relating BTP to one another, in a “group” is represented by containing them within the
3964 btp:related-group element, with the related messages as child elements. The processing for the
3965 group is defined in the section “Groups – combinations of related messages”. For example

```
3966     <btp:related-group>
3967     <btp:context-reply>
3968     ...<completion-status>related</completion-status> ...
3969     </btp:context-reply>
```

```
3970     <btp:enrol>...</btp:enrol>
3971     <btp:prepared>...</btp:prepared>
3972 </btp:related-group>
```

3973 If the rules for the group state that the “target-address” of the abstract message is omitted, the
3974 corresponding target-address-information element shall be absent in the message in the related-
3975 group. The carrier protocol binding specifies how a relation between application and BTP
3976 messages is represented.

3977 Bundling (semantically insignificant combination) of BTP messages and related groups is
3978 indicated with the "btp:messages" element, with the bundled messages and related groups as child
3979 elements. For example (confirming one and cancelling another inferences of a cohesion):

3980

```
3981     <btp:messages>
3982     <btp:confirm>...</btp:confirm>
3983     <btp:cancel>...</btp:cancel>
3984 </btp:messages>
3985
```

3986 XML Schemas

3987 XML schema for BTP messages

```
3988 <?xml version="1.0"?>
3989 <schema
3990   xmlns="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
3991   targetNamespace="urn:oasis:names:tc:BTP:1.0:core"
3992   xmlns:btp="urn:oasis:names:tc:BTP:1.0:core"
3993   elementFormDefault="qualified">
3994
3995   <!-- Qualifiers -->
3996   <complexType name="qualifier-type">
3997     <simpleContent>
3998       <extension base="string">
3999         <attribute name="must-be-understood" type="boolean"/>
4000         <attribute name="to-be-propagated" type="boolean"/>
4001       </extension>
4002     </simpleContent>
4003   </complexType>
4004
4005   <element name="qualifier" type="btp:qualifier-type" abstract="true"/>
4006
4007   <element name="qualifiers">
4008     <complexType>
4009       <sequence>
4010         <element ref="btp:qualifier" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
4011       </sequence>
4012     </complexType>
4013   </element>
4014   <!-- example qualifier:
4015     <element name="some-qualifer" type="btp:qualifier-type"
4016 substitutionGroup="btp:qualifier"/>
```

```

4017 -->
4018
4019 <!-- Message set data types -->
4020 <simpleType name="identifier">
4021     <restriction base="anyURI" />
4022 </simpleType>
4023 <simpleType name="additional-information">
4024     <restriction base="string" />
4025 </simpleType>
4026 <complexType name="address">
4027     <sequence>
4028         <element name="binding-name" type="anyURI"/>
4029         <element name="binding-address" type="string"/>
4030         <element name="additional-information" type="btp:additional-
4031 information" minOccurs="0" />
4032     </sequence>
4033 </complexType>
4034 <simpleType name="superior-type">
4035     <restriction base="string">
4036         <enumeration value="cohesion"/>
4037         <enumeration value="atom"/>
4038     </restriction>
4039 </simpleType>
4040 <simpleType name="transaction-type">
4041     <restriction base="string">
4042         <enumeration value="cohesion"/>
4043         <enumeration value="atom"/>
4044     </restriction>
4045 </simpleType>
4046
4047 <!-- Compounding -->
4048 <element name="messages">
4049     <complexType>
4050         <sequence>
4051             <element ref="btp:message" minOccurs="0"
4052 maxOccurs="unbounded" />
4053         </sequence>
4054     </complexType>
4055 </element>
4056 <element name="related-group" substitutionGroup="btp:message">
4057     <complexType>
4058         <sequence>
4059             <element ref="btp:message" minOccurs="0"
4060 maxOccurs="unbounded" />
4061         </sequence>
4062     </complexType>
4063 </element>
4064
4065 <!-- Message set -->
4066 <element name="message" abstract="true" />
4067 <element name="context" substitutionGroup="btp:message">
4068     <complexType>
4069         <sequence>
4070             <element name="superior-address" type="btp:address"
4071 maxOccurs="unbounded" />

```

```

4072         <element name="superior-identifier" type="btp:identifier"/>
4073         <element name="superior-type" type="btp:superior-type"/>
4074         <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
4075         <element name="reply-address" type="btp:address"
4076 minOccurs="0"/>
4077         </sequence>
4078         <attribute name="id" type="ID" use="optional"/>
4079     </complexType>
4080 </element>
4081 <element name="context-reply" substitutionGroup="btp:message">
4082     <complexType>
4083         <sequence>
4084             <element name="superior-identifier" type="btp:identifier"/>
4085             <element name="completion-status">
4086                 <simpleType>
4087                     <restriction base="string">
4088                         <enumeration value="completed"/>
4089                         <enumeration value="incomplete"/>
4090                         <enumeration value="related"/>
4091                         <enumeration value="repudiated"/>
4092                     </restriction>
4093                 </simpleType>
4094             </element>
4095             <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
4096             <element name="target-additional-information"
4097 type="btp:additional-information" minOccurs="0"/>
4098         </sequence>
4099         <attribute name="id" type="ID"/>
4100     </complexType>
4101 </element>
4102 <element name="request-status" substitutionGroup="btp:message">
4103     <complexType>
4104         <sequence>
4105             <element name="target-identifier" type="btp:identifier"/>
4106             <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
4107             <element name="target-additional-information"
4108 type="btp:additional-information" minOccurs="0"/>
4109             <element name="reply-address" type="btp:address"
4110 minOccurs="0"/>
4111         </sequence>
4112         <attribute name="id" type="ID"/>
4113     </complexType>
4114 </element>
4115 <element name="status" substitutionGroup="btp:message">
4116     <complexType>
4117         <sequence>
4118             <element name="responders-identifier"
4119 type="btp:identifier"/>
4120             <element name="status-value">
4121                 <simpleType>
4122                     <restriction base="string">
4123                         <enumeration value="created"/>
4124                         <enumeration value="enrolling"/>
4125                         <enumeration value="active"/>
4126                         <enumeration value="resigning"/>

```

```

4127         <enumeration value="resigned"/>
4128         <enumeration value="preparing"/>
4129         <enumeration value="prepared"/>
4130         <enumeration value="confirming"/>
4131         <enumeration value="confirmed"/>
4132         <enumeration value="cancelling"/>
4133         <enumeration value="cancelled"/>
4134         <enumeration value="cancel-contradiction"/>
4135         <enumeration value="confirm-contradiction"/>
4136         <enumeration value="hazard"/>
4137         <enumeration value="contradicted"/>
4138         <enumeration value="unknown"/>
4139         <enumeration value="inaccessible"/>
4140     </restriction>
4141     </simpleType>
4142 </element>
4143     <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
4144     <element name="target-additional-information"
4145 type="btp:additional-information" minOccurs="0"/>
4146 </sequence>
4147     <attribute name="id" type="ID"/>
4148 </complexType>
4149 </element>
4150
4151     <element name="fault" substitutionGroup="btp:message">
4152         <complexType>
4153             <sequence>
4154                 <element name="superior-identifier" type="btp:identifier"
4155 minOccurs="0"/>
4156                 <element name="inferior-identifier" type="btp:identifier"
4157 minOccurs="0"/>
4158                 <element name="fault-type">
4159                     <simpleType>
4160                         <restriction base="string">
4161                             <enumeration value="communication-failure"/>
4162                             <enumeration value="duplicate-inferior"/>
4163                             <enumeration value="general"/>
4164                             <enumeration value="invalid-decider"/>
4165                             <enumeration value="invalid-inferior"/>
4166                             <enumeration value="invalid-superior"/>
4167                             <enumeration value="status-refused"/>
4168                             <enumeration value="invalid-terminator"/>
4169                             <enumeration value="unknown-parameter"/>
4170                             <enumeration value="unknown-transaction"/>
4171                             <enumeration value="unsupported-qualifier"/>
4172                             <enumeration value="wrong-state"/>
4173                         </restriction>
4174                     </simpleType>
4175                 </element>
4176                 <element name="fault-data" type="anyType" minOccurs="0"/>
4177                 <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
4178                 <element name="target-additional-information"
4179 type="btp:additional-information" minOccurs="0"/>
4180             </sequence>
4181             <attribute name="id" type="ID"/>

```

```

4182     </complexType>
4183 </element>
4184 <element name="enrol" substitutionGroup="btp:message">
4185     <complexType>
4186         <sequence>
4187             <element name="superior-identifier" type="btp:identifier"/>
4188             <element name="response-requested" type="boolean"/>
4189             <element name="reply-address" type="btp:address"
4190 minOccurs="0"/>
4191             <element name="inferior-address" type="btp:address"
4192 minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
4193             <element name="inferior-identifier" type="btp:identifier"/>
4194             <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
4195             <element name="target-additional-information"
4196 type="btp:additional-information" minOccurs="0"/>
4197         </sequence>
4198         <attribute name="id" type="ID"/>
4199     </complexType>
4200 </element>
4201
4202 <element name="enrolled" substitutionGroup="btp:message">
4203     <complexType>
4204         <sequence>
4205             <element name="inferior-identifier" type="btp:identifier"/>
4206             <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
4207             <element name="target-additional-information"
4208 type="btp:additional-information" minOccurs="0"/>
4209         </sequence>
4210         <attribute name="id" type="ID"/>
4211     </complexType>
4212 </element>
4213 <element name="resign" substitutionGroup="btp:message">
4214     <complexType>
4215         <sequence>
4216             <element name="superior-identifier" type="btp:identifier"/>
4217             <element name="inferior-identifier" type="btp:identifier"/>
4218             <element name="response-requested" type="boolean"/>
4219             <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
4220             <element name="target-additional-information"
4221 type="btp:additional-information" minOccurs="0"/>
4222         </sequence>
4223         <attribute name="id" type="ID"/>
4224     </complexType>
4225 </element>
4226
4227 <element name="resigned" substitutionGroup="btp:message">
4228     <complexType>
4229         <sequence>
4230             <element name="inferior-identifier" type="btp:identifier"/>
4231             <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
4232             <element name="target-additional-information"
4233 type="btp:additional-information" minOccurs="0"/>
4234         </sequence>
4235         <attribute name="id" type="ID"/>
4236     </complexType>

```

```

4237     </element>
4238
4239     <element name="prepare" substitutionGroup="btp:message">
4240         <complexType>
4241             <sequence>
4242                 <element name="inferior-identifier" type="btp:identifier"/>
4243                 <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
4244                 <element name="target-additional-information"
4245 type="btp:additional-information" minOccurs="0"/>
4246             </sequence>
4247             <attribute name="id" type="ID"/>
4248         </complexType>
4249     </element>
4250     <element name="prepared" substitutionGroup="btp:message">
4251         <complexType>
4252             <sequence>
4253                 <element name="superior-identifier" type="btp:identifier"/>
4254                 <element name="inferior-identifier" type="btp:identifier"/>
4255                 <element name="default-is-cancel" type="boolean"/>
4256                 <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
4257                 <element name="target-additional-information"
4258 type="btp:additional-information" minOccurs="0"/>
4259             </sequence>
4260             <attribute name="id" type="ID"/>
4261         </complexType>
4262     </element>
4263
4264     <element name="confirm" substitutionGroup="btp:message">
4265         <complexType>
4266             <sequence>
4267                 <element name="inferior-identifier" type="btp:identifier"/>
4268                 <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
4269                 <element name="target-additional-information"
4270 type="btp:additional-information" minOccurs="0"/>
4271             </sequence>
4272             <attribute name="id" type="ID"/>
4273         </complexType>
4274     </element>
4275
4276     <element name="confirmed" substitutionGroup="btp:message">
4277         <complexType>
4278             <sequence>
4279                 <element name="superior-identifier" type="btp:identifier"/>
4280                 <element name="inferior-identifier" type="btp:identifier"/>
4281                 <element name="confirmed-received" type="boolean"/>
4282                 <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
4283                 <element name="target-additional-information"
4284 type="btp:additional-information" minOccurs="0"/>
4285             </sequence>
4286             <attribute name="id" type="ID"/>
4287         </complexType>
4288     </element>
4289     <element name="cancel" substitutionGroup="btp:message">
4290         <complexType>
4291             <sequence>

```

```

4292         <element name="inferior-identifier" type="btp:identifier"/>
4293         <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
4294         <element name="target-additional-information"
4295 type="btp:additional-information" minOccurs="0"/>
4296     </sequence>
4297     <attribute name="id" type="ID"/>
4298 </complexType>
4299 </element>
4300 <element name="cancelled" substitutionGroup="btp:message">
4301     <complexType>
4302         <sequence>
4303             <element name="superior-identifier" type="btp:identifier"/>
4304             <element name="inferior-identifier" type="btp:identifier"
4305 minOccurs="0"/>
4306             <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
4307             <element name="target-additional-information"
4308 type="btp:additional-information" minOccurs="0"/>
4309         </sequence>
4310         <attribute name="id" type="ID"/>
4311     </complexType>
4312 </element>
4313
4314 <element name="confirm-one-phase" substitutionGroup="btp:message">
4315     <complexType>
4316         <sequence>
4317             <element name="inferior-identifier" type="btp:identifier"/>
4318             <element name="report-hazard" type="boolean"/>
4319             <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
4320             <element name="target-additional-information"
4321 type="btp:additional-information" minOccurs="0"/>
4322         </sequence>
4323         <attribute name="id" type="ID"/>
4324     </complexType>
4325 </element>
4326 <element name="hazard" substitutionGroup="btp:message">
4327     <complexType>
4328         <sequence>
4329             <element name="superior-identifier" type="btp:identifier"/>
4330             <element name="inferior-identifier" type="btp:identifier"/>
4331             <element name="level">
4332                 <simpleType>
4333                     <restriction base="string">
4334                         <enumeration value="mixed"/>
4335                         <enumeration value="possible"/>
4336                     </restriction>
4337                 </simpleType>
4338             </element>
4339             <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
4340             <element name="target-additional-information"
4341 type="btp:additional-information" minOccurs="0"/>
4342         </sequence>
4343         <attribute name="id" type="ID"/>
4344     </complexType>
4345 </element>
4346 <element name="contradiction" substitutionGroup="btp:message">

```

```

4347     <complexType>
4348         <sequence>
4349             <element name="inferior-identifier" type="btp:identifier"/>
4350             <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
4351             <element name="target-additional-information"
4352 type="btp:additional-information" minOccurs="0"/>
4353         </sequence>
4354         <attribute name="id" type="ID"/>
4355     </complexType>
4356 </element>
4357
4358 <element name="superior-state" substitutionGroup="btp:message">
4359     <complexType>
4360         <sequence>
4361             <element name="inferior-identifier" type="btp:identifier"/>
4362             <element name="status">
4363                 <simpleType>
4364                     <restriction base="string">
4365                         <enumeration value="active"/>
4366                         <enumeration value="prepared-received"/>
4367                         <enumeration value="inaccessible"/>
4368                         <enumeration value="unknown"/>
4369                     </restriction>
4370                 </simpleType>
4371             </element>
4372             <element name="response-requested" type="boolean"/>
4373             <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
4374             <element name="target-additional-information"
4375 type="btp:additional-information" minOccurs="0"/>
4376         </sequence>
4377         <attribute name="id" type="ID"/>
4378     </complexType>
4379 </element>
4380 <element name="inferior-state" substitutionGroup="btp:message">
4381     <complexType>
4382         <sequence>
4383             <element name="superior-identifier" type="btp:identifier"/>
4384             <element name="inferior-identifier" type="btp:identifier"/>
4385             <element name="status">
4386                 <simpleType>
4387                     <restriction base="string">
4388                         <enumeration value="active"/>
4389                         <enumeration value="inaccessible"/>
4390                         <enumeration value="unknown"/>
4391                     </restriction>
4392                 </simpleType>
4393             </element>
4394             <element name="response-requested" type="boolean"/>
4395             <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
4396             <element name="target-additional-information"
4397 type="btp:additional-information" minOccurs="0"/>
4398         </sequence>
4399         <attribute name="id" type="ID"/>
4400     </complexType>
4401 </element>

```

```

4402     <element name="redirect" substitutionGroup="btp:message">
4403         <complexType>
4404             <sequence>
4405                 <element name="superior-identifier" type="btp:identifier"
4406 minOccurs="0"/>
4407                 <element name="inferior-identifier" type="btp:identifier"
4408 />
4409                 <element name="old-address" type="btp:address"
4410 maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
4411                 <element name="new-address" type="btp:address"
4412 maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
4413                 <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
4414                 <element name="target-additional-information"
4415 type="btp:additional-information" minOccurs="0"/>
4416             </sequence>
4417             <attribute name="id" type="ID"/>
4418         </complexType>
4419     </element>
4420
4421     <element name="begin" substitutionGroup="btp:message">
4422         <complexType>
4423             <sequence>
4424                 <element name="transaction-type" type="btp:superior-type"/>
4425                 <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
4426                 <element name="target-additional-information"
4427 type="btp:additional-information" minOccurs="0"/>
4428                 <element name="reply-address" type="btp:address"
4429 minOccurs="0"/>
4430             </sequence>
4431             <attribute name="id" type="ID"/>
4432         </complexType>
4433     </element>
4434     <element name="begun" substitutionGroup="btp:message">
4435         <complexType>
4436             <sequence>
4437                 <element name="decider-address" type="btp:address"
4438 minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
4439                 <element name="transaction-identifier"
4440 type="btp:identifier" minOccurs="0"/>
4441                 <element name="inferior-identifier" type="btp:identifier"
4442 minOccurs="0"/>
4443                 <element name="inferior-address" type="btp:address"
4444 minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
4445                 <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
4446                 <element name="target-additional-information"
4447 type="btp:additional-information" minOccurs="0"/>
4448             </sequence>
4449             <attribute name="id" type="ID"/>
4450         </complexType>
4451     </element>
4452     <element name="prepare-inferiors" substitutionGroup="btp:message">
4453         <complexType>
4454             <sequence>
4455                 <element name="transaction-identifier"
4456 type="btp:identifier"/>

```

```

4457         <element name="inferiors-list" minOccurs="0">
4458             <complexType>
4459                 <sequence>
4460                     <element name="inferior-identifier"
4461 type="btp:identifier" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
4462                 </sequence>
4463             </complexType>
4464         </element>
4465         <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
4466         <element name="target-additional-information"
4467 type="btp:additional-information" minOccurs="0"/>
4468         <element name="reply-address" type="btp:address"
4469 minOccurs="0"/>
4470     </sequence>
4471     <attribute name="id" type="ID"/>
4472 </complexType>
4473 </element>
4474 <element name="confirm-transaction" substitutionGroup="btp:message">
4475     <complexType>
4476         <sequence>
4477             <element name="transaction-identifier"
4478 type="btp:identifier"/>
4479             <element name="inferiors-list" minOccurs="0">
4480                 <complexType>
4481                     <sequence>
4482                         <element name="inferior-identifier"
4483 type="btp:identifier" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
4484                     </sequence>
4485                 </complexType>
4486             </element>
4487             <element name="report-hazard" type="boolean"/>
4488             <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
4489             <element name="target-additional-information"
4490 type="btp:additional-information" minOccurs="0"/>
4491             <element name="reply-address" type="btp:address"
4492 minOccurs="0"/>
4493         </sequence>
4494         <attribute name="id" type="ID"/>
4495     </complexType>
4496 </element>
4497 <element name="transaction-confirmed" substitutionGroup="btp:message">
4498     <complexType>
4499         <sequence>
4500             <element name="transaction-identifier"
4501 type="btp:identifier"/>
4502             <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
4503             <element name="target-additional-information"
4504 type="btp:additional-information" minOccurs="0"/>
4505         </sequence>
4506         <attribute name="id" type="ID"/>
4507     </complexType>
4508 </element>
4509 <element name="cancel-transaction" substitutionGroup="btp:message">
4510     <complexType>
4511         <sequence>

```

```

4512         <element name="transaction-identifier"
4513 type="btp:identifier"/>
4514         <element name="report-hazard" type="boolean"/>
4515         <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
4516         <element name="target-additional-information"
4517 type="btp:additional-information" minOccurs="0"/>
4518         <element name="reply-address" type="btp:address"
4519 minOccurs="0"/>
4520     </sequence>
4521     <attribute name="id" type="ID"/>
4522 </complexType>
4523 </element>
4524
4525     <element name="cancel-inferiors" substitutionGroup="btp:message">
4526         <complexType>
4527             <sequence>
4528                 <element name="transaction-identifier"
4529 type="btp:identifier" minOccurs="0"/>
4530                 <element name="inferiors-list">
4531                     <complexType>
4532                         <sequence>
4533                             <element name="inferior-identifier"
4534 type="btp:identifier" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
4535                         </sequence>
4536                     </complexType>
4537                 </element>
4538                 <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
4539                 <element name="target-additional-information"
4540 type="btp:additional-information" minOccurs="0"/>
4541                 <element name="reply-address" type="btp:address"
4542 minOccurs="0"/>
4543             </sequence>
4544             <attribute name="id" type="ID"/>
4545         </complexType>
4546     </element>
4547     <element name="transaction-cancelled" substitutionGroup="btp:message">
4548         <complexType>
4549             <sequence>
4550                 <element name="transaction-identifier"
4551 type="btp:identifier"/>
4552                 <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
4553                 <element name="target-additional-information"
4554 type="btp:additional-information" minOccurs="0"/>
4555             </sequence>
4556             <attribute name="id" type="ID"/>
4557         </complexType>
4558     </element>
4559
4560     <element name="request-inferior-statuses"
4561 substitutionGroup="btp:message">
4562         <complexType>
4563             <sequence>
4564                 <element name="target-identifier" type="btp:identifier"/>
4565                 <element name="inferiors-list" minOccurs="0">
4566                     <complexType>

```

```

4567         <sequence>
4568             <element name="inferior-handle"
4569 type="btp:identifier" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
4570         </sequence>
4571     </complexType>
4572 </element>
4573     <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
4574     <element name="target-additional-information"
4575 type="btp:additional-information" minOccurs="0"/>
4576     <element name="reply-address" type="btp:address"
4577 minOccurs="0"/>
4578 </sequence>
4579     <attribute name="id" type="ID"/>
4580 </complexType>
4581 </element>
4582
4583     <element name="inferior-statuses" substitutionGroup="btp:message">
4584         <complexType>
4585             <sequence>
4586                 <element name="responders-identifier"
4587 type="btp:identifier"/>
4588                 <element name="status-list">
4589                     <complexType>
4590                         <sequence>
4591                             <element name="status-item" maxOccurs="unbounded">
4592                                 <complexType>
4593                                     <sequence>
4594                                         <element name="inferior-identifier"
4595 type="btp:identifier"/>
4596                                         <element name="status">
4597                                             <simpleType>
4598                                                 <restriction base="string">
4599                                                     <enumeration value="active"/>
4600                                                     <enumeration value="resigned"/>
4601                                                     <enumeration value="preparing"/>
4602                                                     <enumeration value="prepared"/>
4603                                                     <enumeration value="autonomously-confirmed"/>
4604                                                     <enumeration value="autonomously-cancelled"/>
4605                                                     <enumeration value="confirming"/>
4606                                                     <enumeration value="confirmed"/>
4607                                                     <enumeration value="cancelling"/>
4608                                                     <enumeration value="cancelled"/>
4609                                                     <enumeration value="cancel-contradiction"/>
4610                                                     <enumeration value="confirm-contradiction"/>
4611                                                     <enumeration value="hazard"/>
4612                                                     <enumeration value="invalid"/>
4613                                                 </restriction>
4614                                             </simpleType>
4615                                         </element>
4616                                         <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
4617                                     </sequence>
4618                                 </complexType>
4619                             </element>
4620                         </sequence>
4621                     </complexType>

```

```

4622         </element>
4623         <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
4624         <element name="target-additional-information"
4625 type="btp:additional-information" minOccurs="0"/>
4626     </sequence>
4627     <attribute name="id" type="ID"/>
4628 </complexType>
4629 </element>
4630
4631 </schema>

```

4632 XML schema for standard qualifiers

```

4633 <?xml version="1.0"?>
4634 <schema
4635   xmlns="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
4636   targetNamespace="urn:oasis:names:tc:BTP:1.0:qualifiers"
4637   xmlns:btpq="urn:oasis:names:tc:BTP:1.0:qualifiers"
4638   xmlns:btp="urn:oasis:names:tc:BTP:1.0:core"
4639   elementFormDefault="qualified">
4640
4641   <element name="transaction-timelimit"
4642 substitutionGroup="btp:qualifier">
4643     <complexType>
4644       <complexContent>
4645         <extension base="btp:qualifier-type">
4646           <sequence>
4647             <element name="timelimit"
4648 type="nonNegativeInteger"/>
4649           </sequence>
4650         </extension>
4651       </complexContent>
4652     </complexType>
4653   </element>
4654   <element name="inferior-timeout" substitutionGroup="btp:qualifier">
4655     <complexType>
4656       <complexContent>
4657         <extension base="btp:qualifier-type">
4658           <sequence>
4659             <element name="timelimit"
4660 type="nonNegativeInteger"/>
4661             <element name="intended-decision">
4662               <simpleType>
4663                 <restriction base="string">
4664                   <enumeration value="confirm"/>
4665                   <enumeration value="cancel"/>
4666                 </restriction>
4667               </simpleType>
4668             </element>
4669           </sequence>
4670         </extension>
4671       </complexContent>
4672     </complexType>
4673   </element>

```

```

4674     <element name="minimum-inferior-timeout"
4675 substitutionGroup="btp:qualifier">
4676     <complexType>
4677     <complexContent>
4678     <extension base="btp:qualifier-type">
4679     <sequence>
4680     <element name="minimum-timeout"
4681 type="nonNegativeInteger"/>
4682     </sequence>
4683     </extension>
4684     </complexContent>
4685     </complexType>
4686 </element>
4687 <element name="inferior-name" substitutionGroup="btp:qualifier">
4688     <complexType>
4689     <complexContent>
4690     <extension base="btp:qualifier-type">
4691     <sequence>
4692     <element name="inferior-name" type="string"/>
4693     </sequence>
4694     </extension>
4695     </complexContent>
4696     </complexType>
4697 </element>
4698 </schema>
4699

```

4700 **Carrier Protocol Bindings**

4701 The notion of bindings is introduced to act as the glue between the BTP messages and an
4702 underlying transport. A binding specification must define various particulars of how the BTP
4703 messages are carried and some aspects of how the related application messages are carried. This
4704 document specifies two bindings: a SOAP binding and a SOAP + Attachments binding. However,
4705 other bindings could be specified by the Oasis BTP technical committee or by a third party. For
4706 example, in the future a binding might exist to put a BTP message directly on top of HTTP
4707 without the use of SOAP, or a closed community could define their own binding. To ensure that
4708 such specifications are complete, the Binding Proforma defines the information that must be
4709 included in a binding specification.

4710 **Carrier Protocol Binding Proforma**

4711 A BTP carrier binding specification should provide the following information:

4712 **Binding name:** A name for the binding, as used in the “binding name” field of BTP addresses
4713 (and available for declaring the capabilities of an implementation). Binding specified in this
4714 document, and future revisions of this document have binding names that are simple strings of
4715 letters, numbers and hyphens (and, in particular, do not contain colons). Bindings specified
4716 elsewhere shall have binding names that are URIs. Bindings specified in this document use
4717 numbers to identify the version of the binding, not the version(s) of the carrier protocol.

4718 **Binding address format:** This section states the format of the “binding address” field of a BTP
4719 address for this binding. For many bindings, this will be a URL of some kind; for other bindings
4720 it may be some other form

4721 **BTP message representation:** This section will define how BTP messages are represented. For
4722 many bindings, the BTP message syntax will be as specified in the XML schema defined in this
4723 document, and the normal string encoding of that XML will be used.

4724 **Mapping for BTP messages (unrelated) :** This section will define how BTP messages that are
4725 not related to application messages are sent in either direction between Superior and Inferior. (i.e.
4726 those messages sent directly between BTP actors). This mapping need not be symmetric (i.e.
4727 Superior to Inferior may differ to some degree to Inferior to Superior). The mapping may define
4728 particular rules for particular BTP messages, or messages with particular parameter values (e.g.
4729 the FAULT message with “fault-type” “CommunicationFailure” will typically not be sent as a
4730 BTP message). The mapping states any constraints or requirements on which BTP may or must
4731 be bundled together by compounding.

4732 **Mapping for BTP messages related to application messages:** This section will define how
4733 BTP messages that are related to application messages are sent. A binding specification may defer
4734 details of this to a particular application (e.g. a mapping specification could just say “the
4735 CONTEXT may be carried as a parameter of an application invocation”). Alternatively, the
4736 binding may specify a general method that represents the relationship between application and
4737 BTP messages.

4738 **Implicit messages:** This section specifies which BTP messages, if any, are not sent explicitly but
4739 are treated as implicit in carrier-protocol mechanisms, application messages or other BTP
4740 messages. This may depend on particular parameter values of the BTP messages or the
4741 application messages.

4742 **Faults:** The relationship between the fault and exception reporting mechanisms of the carrier
4743 protocol and of BTP shall be defined. This may include definition of which carrier protocol
4744 exceptions are equivalent to a FAULT/communication-failure message.

4745 **Relationship to other bindings:** Any relationship to other bindings is defined in this section. If
4746 BTP addresses with different bindings are be considered to match (for purposes of identifying the
4747 peer Superior/Inferior and redirection), this should be specified here.

4748 **Limitations on BTP use:** Any limitations on the full range of BTP functionality that are imposed
4749 by use of this binding should be listed. This would include limitations on which messages can be
4750 sent, which event sequences are supported and restrictions on parameter values. Such limitations
4751 may reduce the usefulness of an implementation, but may be appropriate in certain environments.

4752 **Other:** Other features of the binding, especially any that will potentially affect interoperation
4753 should be specified here. This may include restrictions or requirements on the use or support of
4754 optional carrier parameters or mechanisms or use of standard or other qualifiers.

4755 **Bindings for request/response carrier protocols**

4756 BTP does not generally follow a request/response pattern. In particular, on the outcome
4757 relationship either side may initiate a message – this is an essential part of the presume-abort
4758 recovery paradigm although it is not limited to recovery cases. However, there are some BTP
4759 messages, especially in the control relationship, that do have a request/response pattern. Many
4760 (potential) carrier protocols (e.g. HTTP) do have a request/response pattern. The specification of
4761 a binding specification to a request/response carrier protocol needs to state what rules apply –
4762 which messages can be carried by requests, which by responses. The simplest rule is to send all
4763 BTP messages on requests, and let the carrier responses travel back empty. This would be
4764 inefficient in use of network resources, and possibly inconvenient when used for the BTP
4765 request/response pairs.

4766 This section defines a set of rules that allow more efficient use of the carrier, while allowing the
4767 initiator of a BTP request/response pair to ensure the BTP response is sent back on the carrier
4768 response. These rules are specified in this section to enable binding specifications to reference
4769 them, without requiring each binding specification to repeat similar information. These rules also
4770 allow the receiver of a message between Superior and Inferior (in either direction) on a carrier
4771 protocol request to send any reply message on the carrier response – the “sender-address” field is
4772 implicitly considered to be that of the sender of the carrier request.

4773 A binding to a request/response carrier is not required to use these rules. It may define other rules.

4774 **Request/response exploitation rules**

4775 These rules allow implementations to use the request and response of the carrier protocol
4776 efficiently, and, when a BTP request/response exchange occurs, to either treat the
4777 request/response exchanges of the carrier protocol and of BTP independently, if both sides wish,
4778 or allow either side to map them closely.

4779 Under these rules, an implementation sending a BTP request (i.e. a message, other than
4780 CONTEXT, which has “reply-address” as a parameter in the abstract message definition), can
4781 ensure that it and the reply map to a carrier request/response by supplying no value for the “reply-
4782 address”. An implementation receiving such a request is required to send the BTP response on the
4783 carrier response.

4784 Conversely, if an implementation does supply a “reply-address” value on the request, the receiver
4785 has the option of sending the BTP response back on the carrier response, or sending it on a new
4786 carrier request.

4787 Within the outcome relationship, apart from ENROL, there is no “reply-address”, and the parties
4788 normally know each other’s “superior-address” and “inferior-address”. However, these messages
4789 have a “sender-address”, which is used when the receiver does not have knowledge of the peer. In
4790 this case, the “sender-address” is treated as the “reply-address” of the other messages – if the field
4791 is absent in a message on a carrier request, the “sender-address” is implicitly that of the request
4792 sender. Any message for the peer (including the three messages mentioned, FAULT but also any
4793 other valid message in the Superior:Inferior relationship) may be sent on the carrier response.
4794 Apart from this, both sides are permitted to treat the carrier request/response exchanges as
4795 opportunities for sending messages to the appropriate destination.

4796 The rules:

- 4797 a) A BTP actor **may** bundle one or more BTP messages and related groups that
4798 have the same binding address for their target in a single btp:messages and
4799 transmit this btp:messages element on a carrier protocol request. There is no
4800 restriction on which combinations of messages and groups may be so bundled,
4801 other than that they have the same binding address, and that this binding address
4802 is usable as the destination of a carrier protocol request.
- 4803 b) A BTP actor that has received a carrier protocol request to which it has not yet
4804 responded, and which has one or more BTP messages and groups whose binding
4805 address for the target matches the origin of the carrier request **may** bundle such
4806 BTP messages in a single btp:messages element and transmit that on the carrier
4807 protocol response.
- 4808 c) A BTP actor that has received, on a carrier protocol request, one or more BTP
4809 messages or related groups that require a BTP response and for which no “reply-
4810 address” was supplied, **must** bundle the responding BTP message and groups in a
4811 btp:messages element and transmit this element on the carrier protocol response
4812 to the request that carried the BTP request.
- 4813 d) A BTP actor that has received, on a carrier protocol request, one or more BTP
4814 messages or related groups that, as abstract messages, have a “sender-address”
4815 parameter but no “reply-address” was supplied and does not have knowledge of
4816 the peer address, **must** bundle the responding BTP message and groups in a
4817 btp:messages element and transmit this element on the carrier protocol response
4818 to the request that carried the BTP request. If the actor does have knowledge of
4819 the peer address it **may** send one or messages for the peer in the carrier protocol
4820 response, regardless of whether the binding address of the peer matches the
4821 address of the carrier protocol requestor.
- 4822 e) Where only one message or group is to be sent, it shall be contained within a
4823 btp:messages element, as a bundle of one element.
- 4824 f) A BTP actor that receives a carrier protocol request carrying BTP messages that
4825 do have a “reply-address”, or which initiate processing that produces BTP
4826 messages whose target binding address matches the origin of the request, **may**
4827 freely choose whether to use the carrier protocol response for the replies, or to
4828 send back an “empty carrier protocol response”, and send the BTP replies in a
4829 separately initiated carrier protocol request. The characteristics of an “empty
4830 carrier protocol response” shall be stated in the particular binding specification.
- 4831 g) A BTP actor that sends BTP messages on a carrier protocol request **must** be able
4832 to accept returning BTP messages on the corresponding carrier protocol response
4833 and, if the actor has offered an address on which it will receive carrier requests,
4834 must be able to accept “replying” BTP messages on a separate carrier protocol
4835 request.

4836 **SOAP Binding**

4837 This binding describes how BTP messages will be carried using SOAP as in the [SOAP 1.1](#)
4838 specification, using the SOAP literal messaging style conventions. If no application message is
4839 sent at the same time, the BTP messages are contained within the SOAP Body element. If
4840 application messages are sent, the BTP messages are contained in the SOAP Header element.

4841 **Binding name:** soap-http-1

4842 **Binding address format:** shall be a URL, of type HTTP.

4843 **BTP message representation:** The string representation of the XML, as specified in the XML
4844 schema defined in this document shall be used. The BTP XML messages are embedded in the
4845 SOAP message without the use of any specific encoding rules (literal style SOAP message);
4846 hence the encodingStyle attribute need not be set or can be set to an empty string.

4847 **Mapping for BTP messages (unrelated):** The “request/response exploitation” rules shall be
4848 used.

4849 BTP messages sent on an HTTP request or HTTP response which is not carrying an application
4850 message, the messages are contained in a single btp:messages element which is the immediate
4851 child element of the SOAP Body element.

4852 An “empty carrier protocol response” sent after receiving an HTTP request containing a
4853 btp:messages element in the SOAP Body when the implementation chooses just to reply at the
4854 lower level (and when the request/response exploitation rules allow an empty carrier protocol
4855 response), shall be any of:

- 4856 a) an empty HTTP response
- 4857 b) an HTTP response containing an empty SOAP Envelope
- 4858 c) an HTTP response containing a SOAP Envelope containing a single, empty
4859 btp:messages element.

4860 The receiver (the initial sender of the HTTP request) shall treat these in the same way – they have
4861 no effect on the BTP sequence (other than indicating that the earlier sending did not cause a
4862 communication failure.)

4863 If an application message is being sent at the same time, the mapping for related messages shall
4864 be used, as if the BTP messages were related to the application message. (There is no ambiguity
4865 in whether the BTP messages are related, because only CONTEXT and ENROL can be related to
4866 an application message.)

4867 **Mapping for BTP messages related to application messages:** All BTP messages sent with an
4868 application message, whether related to the application message or not, shall be sent in a single
4869 btp:messages element in the SOAP Header. There shall be precisely one btp:messages element in
4870 the SOAP Header.

4871 The “request/response exploitation” rules shall apply to the BTP messages carried in the SOAP
4872 Header, as if they had been carried in a SOAP Body, unrelated to an application message, sent to
4873 the same binding address.

4874 *Note – The application protocol itself (which is using the SOAP Body) may use the SOAP*
4875 *RPC or document approach – this is determined by the application.*

4876 Only CONTEXT and ENROL messages are related (&) to application messages. If there is only
4877 one CONTEXT or one ENROL message present in the SOAP Header, it is assumed to be related
4878 to the whole of the application message in the SOAP Body. If there are multiple CONTEXT or
4879 ENROL messages, any relation of these BTP messages shall be indicated by application specific
4880 means.

4881 *Note 1 – An application protocol could use references to the ID values of the*
4882 *BTP messages to indicate relation between BTP CONTEXT or ENROL*
4883 *messages and the application message.*

4884 *Note 2 -- However indicated, what the relatedness means, or even whether it has*
4885 *any significance at all, is a matter for the application.*

4886 **Implicit messages:** A SOAP FAULT, or other communication failure received in response to a
4887 SOAP request that had a CONTEXT in the SOAP Header shall be treated as if a
4888 CONTEXT_REPLY/repudiated had been received. See also the discussion under “other” about
4889 the SOAP mustUnderstand attribute.

4890 **Faults:** A SOAP FAULT or other communication failure shall be treated as
4891 FAULT/communication-failure.

4892 **Relationship to other bindings:** A BTP address for Superior or Inferior that has the binding
4893 string “soap-http-1” is considered to match one that has the binding string “soap-attachments-
4894 http-1” if the binding address and additional information fields match.

4895 **Limitations on BTP use:** None

4896 **Other:** The SOAP BTP binding does not make use of SOAPAction HTTP header or actor
4897 attribute. The SOAPAction HTTP header is left to be application specific when there are
4898 application messages in the SOAP Body, as an already existing web service that is being
4899 upgraded to use BTP might have already made use of SOAPAction. The SOAPAction HTTP
4900 header shall contain no value when the SOAP message carries only BTP messages in the SOAP
4901 Body.

4902 The SOAP mustUnderstand attribute, when used on the btp:messages containing a BTP
4903 CONTEXT, ensures that the receiver (server, as a whole) supports BTP sufficiently to determine
4904 whether any enrolments are necessary and replies with CONTEXT_REPLY as appropriate. The
4905 sender of the CONTEXT (and related application message) can use this to ensure that the
4906 application work is performed as part of the business transaction, assuming the receiver’s SOAP
4907 implementation supports the mustUnderstand attribute. If mustUnderstand if false, a receiver can
4908 ignore the CONTEXT (if BTP is not supported there), and no CONTEXT_REPLY will be
4909 returned. It is a local option on the sender (client) side whether the absence of a
4910 CONTEXT_REPLY is assumed to be equivalent to aCONTEXT_REPLY/ok (and the business
4911 transaction allowed to proceed to confirmation).

4912 Note – some SOAP implementations may not support the mustUnderstand attribute sufficiently to
4913 enforce these requirements.

4914 Example scenario using SOAP binding

4915 The example below shows an application request with CONTEXT message sent from
4916 client.example.com (which includes the Superior) to services.example.com (Service).

```
4917 <soap:Envelope
4918     xmlns:soap="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope/"
4919     soap:encodingStyle="">
4920   <soap:Header>
4921     <btp:messages xmlns:btp="urn:oasis:names:tc:BTP:1.0:core">
4922       <btp:context superior-type="atom">
4923         <btp:superior-address>
4924           <btp:binding>soap-http-1</btp:binding>
4925           <btp:binding-
4926             address>http://client.example.com/soaphandler</btp:binding-
4927             address>
4928           <btp:additional-information>btpengine</btp:additional-
4929             information>
4930         </btp:superior-address>
4931         <btp:superior-
4932           identifier>http://example.com/1001</btp:superior-identifier>
4933         <btp:qualifiers>
4934           <btpq:transaction-timelimit
4935             xmlns:btpq="urn:oasis:names:tc:BTP:1.0:qualifiers"><btpq:timelimit
4936               >1800</btpq:timelimit></btpq:transaction-timelimit>
4937           </btp:qualifiers>
4938         </btp:context>
4939       </btp:messages>
4940     </soap:Header>
4941     <soap:Body>
4942       <ns1:orderGoods
4943         xmlns:ns1="http://example.com/2001/Services/xyzgoods">
4944         <custID>ABC8329045</custID>
4945         <itemID>224352</itemID>
4946         <quantity>5</quantity>
4947       </ns1:orderGoods>
4948     </soap:Body>
4949 </soap:Envelope>
```

4952 The example below shows CONTEXT_REPLY and a related ENROL message sent from
4953 services.example.com to client.example.com, in reply to the previous message. There is no
4954 application response, so the BTP messages are in the SOAP Body. The ENROL message does not
4955 contain the target-additional-information, since the grouping rules for CONTEXT_REPLY &
4956 ENROL omit the “target-address” (the receiver of this example remembers the superior address
4957 from the original CONTEXT)

```
4958 <soap:Envelope
4959     xmlns:soap="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope/"
```

```

4960     soap:encodingStyle="">
4961     <soap:Header>
4962     </soap:Header>
4963     <soap:Body>
4964         <btp:messages xmlns:btp="urn:oasis:names:tc:BTP:1.0:core">
4965             <btp:related-group>
4966                 <btp:context-reply>
4967                     <btp:target-additional-information>btpengine</btp:target-
4968 additional-information>
4969                 <btp:superior-
4970 identifier>http://example.com/1001</btp:superior-identifier>
4971                 <completion-status>related</completion-status>
4972                 </btp:context-reply>
4973                 <btp:enrol response-requested="false">
4974                     <btp:target-additional-
4975 information>btpengine</btp:target-additional-information>
4976                     <btp:superior-
4977 identifier>http://example.com/1001</btp:superior-identifier>
4978                     <btp:inferior-address>
4979                         <btp:binding>soap-http-1</btp:binding>
4980                         <btp:binding-address>
4981                             http://services.example.com/soaphandler
4982                         </btp:binding-address>
4983                     </btp:inferior-address>
4984                     <btp:inferior-identifier>
4985                         http://example.com/AAAB
4986                     </btp:inferior-identifier>
4987                 </btp:enrol>
4988             </btp:related-group>
4989         </btp:messages>
4990     </soap:Body>
4991 </soap:Envelope>
4992

```

4993 **SOAP + Attachments Binding**

4994 This binding describes how BTP messages will be carried using SOAP as in the [SOAP Messages](#)
4995 [with Attachments](#) specification. It is a superset of the Basic SOAP binding, soap-http-1. The two
4996 bindings only differ when application messages are sent.

4997 **Binding name:** soap-attachments-http-1

4998 **Binding address format:** as for soap-http-1

4999 **BTP message representation:** As for soap-http-1

5000 **Mapping for BTP messages (unrelated):** As for “soap-http-1”, except the SOAP Envelope
5001 containing the SOAP Body containing the BTP messages shall be in a MIME body part, as
5002 specified in [SOAP Messages with Attachments](#) specification. If an application message is being
5003 sent at the same time, the mapping for related messages for this binding shall be used, as if the
5004 BTP messages were related to the application message(s).

5005 **Mapping for BTP messages related to application messages:** MIME packaging shall be used.
5006 One of the MIME multipart/related parts shall contain a SOAP Envelope, whose SOAP Headers
5007 element shall contain precisely one `btm:messages` element, containing any BTP messages. Any
5008 BTP CONTEXT in the `btm:messages` is considered to be related to the application message(s) in
5009 the SOAP Body, and to also any of the MIME parts referenced from the SOAP Body (using the
5010 “href” attribute).

5011 **Implicit messages:** As for soap-http-1.

5012 **Faults:** As for soap-http-1.

5013 **Relationship to other bindings:** A BTP address for Superior or Inferior that has the binding
5014 string “soap-http-1” is considered to match one that has the binding string “soap-attachements-
5015 http-1” if the binding address and additional information fields match.

5016 **Limitations on BTP use:** None

5017 **Other:** As for soap-http-1

5018 *Example using SOAP + Attachments binding*

```
5019 Content-Type: Multipart/Related; boundary=MIME_boundary;  
5020 type=text/xml;  
5021     start="someID"  
5022 --MIME_boundary  
5023 Content-Type: text/xml; charset=UTF-8  
5024 Content-ID: someID  
5025 <?xml version='1.0' ?>  
5026 <soap:Envelope  
5027     xmlns:soap="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope/"  
5028     soap:encodingStyle=" " >  
5029   <soap:Header>  
5030     <btm:messages xmlns:btm="urn:oasis:names:tc:BTP:1.0:core">  
5031       <btm:context superior-type="atom">  
5032         <btm:superior-address>  
5033           <btm:binding>soap-http-1</btm:binding>  
5034           <btm:binding-address>  
5035             http://client.example.com/soaphandler  
5036           </btm:binding-address>  
5037         </btm:superior-address>  
5038         <btm:superior-  
5039 identifier>http://example.com/1001</btm:superior-identifier>  
5040       </btm:context>  
5041     </btm:messages>  
5042   </soap:Header>  
5043   <soap:Body>  
5044     <orderGoods href="cid:anotherID"/>  
5045   </soap:Body>  
5046 </soap:Envelope>  
5047 --MIME_boundary  
5048 Content-Type: text/xml  
5049 Content-ID: anotherID
```

5050
5051
5052
5053
5054
5055
5056
5057

```
<ns1:orderGoods
xmlns:ns1="http://example.com/2001/Services/xyzgoods">
  <custID>ABC8329045</custID>
  <itemID>224352</itemID>
  <quantity>5</quantity>
</ns1:orderGoods>

--MIME_boundary--
```

5058

Conformance

5059
5060
5061

A BTP implementation need not implement all aspects of the protocol to be useful. The level of conformance of an implementation is defined by which roles it can support using the specified messages and carrier protocol bindings for interoperation with other implementations.

5062
5063
5064
5065
5066
5067

An implementation may implement some roles and relationships in accordance with this specification, while providing the (approximate) functionality of other roles in some other manner. (For example, an implementation might provide an equivalent of the control relationships using a language-specific API, but support roles involved in the outcome relationships using standard BTP messages.) Such an implementation is conformant in respect of the roles it does implement in accordance with this specification.

5068
5069
5070

An implementation can state which aspects of the BTP specification it conforms to in terms of which Roles it supports. Since most Roles cannot usefully be supported in isolation, the following Role Groups can be used to describe implementation capabilities:.

Role Group	Roles
Initiator/Terminator	Initiator Terminator
Cohesive Hub	Factory Composer (as Decider and Superior) Coordinator (as Decider and Superior) Sub-composer Sub-coordinator
Atomic Hub	Factory Coordinator Sub-coordinator
Cohesive Superior	Composer (as Superior only) Sub-Composer Coordinator (as Superior only) Sub-coordinator
Atomic Superior	Coordinator (as Superior only)) Sub-coordinator

Role Group	Roles
Participant	Inferior Enroller

5071
5072 The Role Groups occupy different positions within a business transaction tree and thus require
5073 presence of implementations supporting other Role Groups:

5074 Initiator/Terminator uses control relationship to Atomic Hub or Cohesive Hub to initiate
5075 and control Atoms or Cohesions. Initiator/Terminator would typically be a library linked
5076 with application software.

5077 Atomic Hub and Cohesive Hub would often be standalone servers.

5078 Cohesive Superior and Atomic Superior would provide the equivalent of
5079 Initiator/Terminator functionality by internal or proprietary means.

5080 Cohesive Hubs, Atomic Hubs, Cohesive Superior and Atomic Superior use outcome
5081 relationships to Participants and to each other.

5082 Participants will establish outcome relationships to implementations of any of the other
5083 Role Groups except Initiator/Terminator. A Participant “covers” a resource or application
5084 work of some kind. It should be noted that a Participant is unaffected by whether it is
5085 enrolled in an Atom or Cohesion – it gets only a single outcome.

5086 An implementation may support one or more Role Groups. The following combinations are
5087 defined as commonly expected conformance profiles, although other combinations or selections
5088 are equally possible.

Conformance Profile	Role Groups
Participant Only	Participant
Atomic	Atomic Superior Participant
Cohesive	Cohesive Superior Participant
Atomic Coordination Hub	Initiator/Terminator Atomic Coordination -Hub Participant
Cohesive Coordination Hub	Initiator/Terminator Cohesive Coordination -Hub Participant

5089

5090 BTP has several features, such as optional parameters, that allow alternative implementation
5091 architectures. Implementations should pay particular attention to avoid assuming their peers have
5092 made the same implementation options as they have (e.g. an implementation that always sends

5093 ENROL with the same inferior address and with the “reply-address” absent (because the Inferior
5094 in all transactions are dealt with by the same addressable entity), must not assume that the same is
5095 true of received ENROLs)

5096

Actor	An entity that executes procedures, a software agent. (See also BTP Actor)
Address	An identifier for an endpoint.
Application	<p>An actor, which uses the Business Transaction Protocol (in the context of this specification).</p> <p>Also, a group of such actors, which may be distributed, that perform a common purpose.</p> <p>(When used in phrases such as “determined by the Application”, it is not relevant to BTP whether this is determined by the owner of a single system or is explicitly part of the contract that defines the distributed collaborative application. When it is necessary to distinguish the responsibilities of a single party, the term “Application element” is used.)</p>
Application element	An actor that communicates, using application protocols, with other application elements, as part of an overall distributed application. A single system may contain more than one application element.
Application Endpoint	An endpoint of an application message.
Application Message	A message produced by an application element and consumed by an application element.
Application Operation	An operation, which is started when an application message arrives.
Appropriate	In accordance with a pertinent contract or specification.
Atom	A set of participants, which are the direct inferiors of a node (which may have only one member), all of which will receive instructions that will result in a homogeneous outcome. That is they will be issued instructions to all confirm or all cancel. (Transitively, a set of operations whose effect is capable of counter effect.)

Atomic Business Transaction

A complete business transaction that follows the atom rules for every node in the transaction tree over space and time, so that all the participants in the transaction will receive instructions that will result in a homogeneous outcome. That is they will be issued instructions to all confirm or all cancel. (Transitively, a set of operations whose effect is capable of counter effect.)

Become prepared

Ensure that of a set of procedures is capable of being successfully instructed to cancel or to confirm.

BTP Actor

A software entity, or agent, that is able to take part in Business Transaction Protocol exchanges i.e. that sends or receives BTP messages. A BTP Actor may be capable of only playing a single role, or of playing several different roles concurrently and / or sequentially. A BTP Actor may be involved in one, or more, transactions, concurrently and / or sequentially.

BTP element

A BTP actor that supports an application element (or elements) but is not itself concerned with application messages or semantics.

(Business) Application Protocol

The messages, their meanings and their permitted sequences used to effect a change in the state of a business relationship.

(Business) application system

A system that contains one, or more, business applications, and resources such as volatile and persistent storage for business state information. It may also contain other things such as an operating system and BTP elements.

Business relationship agreement

The contract and / or set of agreements that govern and constrain a business relationship between two, or more, parties.

Business relationship

A *business relationship* is any distributed state held by the parties, which is subject to contractual constraints agreed by those parties.

Business Transaction Protocol (BTP)

The messages, their meanings and their permitted sequences defined in this specification. Its purpose is to provide the interactions (or signalling) required to coordinate the effects of application protocol to achieve a business transaction.

BTP-Address

A compound address consisting of three parts. The first part, the “binding name”, identifies the binding to a particular carrier protocol – some bindings are specified in this document, others can be specified elsewhere. The second part of the address, the “binding address”, is meaningful to the carrier protocol itself, which will use it for the communication (i.e. it will permit a message to be delivered to a receiver). The third part, “additional information”, is not used or understood by the carrier protocol. The “additional information” may be a structured value.

Business transaction

A set of state changes that occur, or are desired, in computer systems controlled by some set of parties, and these changes are related in some application defined manner. A *business transaction* is subject to, and a part of, a *business relationship*. (BTP assumes that the parties involved in a *business transaction* have distinct and autonomous application systems, which do not require knowledge of each others’ implementation or internal state representations in volatile or persistent storage. Access to such loosely coupled systems is assumed to occur only through service interfaces.)

Cancel

Process a counter effect for the current effect of a set of procedures. There are a number of different ways that this may be achieved in practice.

Carrier Protocol

A protocol, which defines how the transmission of BTP messages occur.

Carrier Protocol Address

The address of an endpoint for a particular carrier protocol.

(CPA)**Client**

An actor, which sends application messages to services.

Cohesion

A set of participants, which are the direct inferiors of a node that may receive instructions that may result in different outcomes for each participant. That is they will be issued instructions to confirm or cancel according to the application logic. Participants may resign or be instructed to cancel until the confirm set is fixed. Once the confirm set for a cohesion is fixed, then all participants in the confirm set are treated atomically. That is they will all be instructed to confirm unless one, or more, cancel in which case all will be instructed to cancel. All participants not in the confirm set will be instructed to cancel.

Cohesive Business Transaction	A complete business transaction for which at least one node over space and time follows the cohesion rules. The other nodes in the transaction tree of a cohesive business transaction may follow either the cohesion rules or the atom rules.
Confirm	Ensure that the effect of a set of procedures is completed. There are a number of different ways that this may be achieved in practice.
Context	Information pertinent to a single transaction, or branch of a transaction.
Contract	Any rule, agreement or promise which constrains an actor's behaviour and is known to any other actor, and upon which any other knowing actor may rely.
Control relationship	The application element:BTP element relationships that create the nodes of the transaction tree (Initiator:Factory) and drive the completion (Terminator:Decider).
Coordinator	A BTP actor, which is the top 'node' of a transaction and decides the outcome of its immediate branches according to the atom rules defined in this specification. It has a lifetime, which is coincident with that of the atom. A coordinator can issue instructions to prepare, cancel and confirm. These instructions take the form of BTP messages. A coordinator is identified by its transaction-identifier. A coordinator must also have a BTP Address to which participants can send BTP messages.
Counter effect	An appropriate effect intended to counteract a prior effect.
Counter effect contract	The contract, which governs the relationship between the effect and the counter effect of a procedure. In the absence of any other overriding contracts the counter effect contract is the promise that the Counter effect will attempt so far as is possible to reverse or cancel the Effect such that an observer (on completion of the Counter effect) is unaware that the Effect ever occurred, but this attempt cannot be guaranteed to succeed.

Decider	<p>The top node of a transaction tree, a composer or a coordinator (so called because the Terminator can only request confirmation – the Decider makes the final determination). The term can always be interpreted as “Composer or Coordinator”.</p> <p>It is the role at the other end of a control relationship to a Terminator.</p>
Delivery parameter	<p>A parameter of an abstract message that is concerned with the transmission of the message to its target or the transmission of an immediate reply.. Distinguished from Payload parameter.</p>
Effect	<p>The changes induced by the incomplete or complete processing of a set of procedures by an actor, which are observable by another contemporary or future actor, and which are made in conformance with a contract known to any such observer. This contract must state the counter effect of the effect, and this is known as a counter effect contract. An effect is Completed when the change inducing processing of the set of procedures is finished.</p>
Endpoint	<p>A sender or receiver.</p>
Enroller	<p>The BTP Actor role that informs a superior of the existence of an inferior.</p>
Factory	<p>The BTP Actor role that creates transaction contexts and deciders.</p>
Inappropriate	<p>In violation of a pertinent contract or specification.</p>
Ineffectual	<p>Describes a set of procedures, which has no effect.</p>
Inferior	<p>The end of end of a BTP node to BTP node relationship governed by the outcome protocol that is topologically further from the top of the transaction tree.</p>
Inferior-Address	<p>The address used to communicate with an actor playing the role of an Inferior.</p>
Inferior-identifier	<p>A globally unambiguous identification of a particular Inferior within a single transaction (represented as an URI or equivalent).</p>
Initiator	<p>The BTP Actor role (an application element) that starts a transaction.</p>

Intermediate	A node that is a sub-composer or a sub-coordinator. An alternative term to interposed.
Interposed	A node that is a sub-composer or a sub-coordinator. An alternative term to intermediate.
Message	A datum, which is produced and then consumed.
Node	A logical entity that is associated with a single transaction. A node is a composer, a coordinator, a sub-coordinator, a sub-composer, or a participant.
Operation	A procedure, which is started by a receiver when a message arrives at it.
Outcome	A decision to either cancel or confirm.
Outcome relationship	The Superior:Inferior relationship (i.e. between BTP actors within the transaction tree) and the Enroller:Superior relationship used in establishing it.
Participant	A participant is part of an application system that also contains one, or more, applications, which manipulate resources. It is a role of a BTP Actor that is (or is equivalent to) a set of procedures, which is capable of receiving instructions from another BTP Actor to prepare, cancel and confirm. These signals are used by the application(s) to determine whether to effect (confirm) or counter effect (cancel) the results of application operations. A participant must also have a BTP Address, to which these instructions will be delivered, in the form of BTP messages. A participant is identified by an inferior-identifier.
Payload parameter	A parameter of an abstract message that is will be received and processed or retained by the receiving BTP actor. The various identifier parameters are considered Payload parameters . Distinguished from Delivery parameter.
Peer	The other party in a two-party relationship, as in Superior to Inferior, or Sender to Receiver.
Provisional Effect	The changes induced by the incomplete or complete processing of a set of procedures by an actor, which are subject to later completion or counter-effecting. The provisional effect may or may not be observable by other actors.
Receiver	The consumer of a message.

Relationship parties	The legal entities that enter into an agreement that forms the basis of the relationship.
Responders-identifier	An identifier carried in a BTP message that can be interpreted as transaction-identifier, a superior-identifier, or an inferior-identifier according to the nature of the role in a BTP actor that is responding to a received message.
Role	The participation of a software agent in a particular relationship in a particular business transaction. The software agent performing a role is termed an Actor .
Sender	The producer of a message.
Service	An actor (an application element), which on receipt of application messages, may start an appropriate application operation. For example, a process that advertises an interface allowing defined RPCs (remote procedure calls) to be invoked by a remote client.
Status requestor	The BTP Actor role that requests the status of another BTP actor.
Sub-composer	An actor, which is not the top 'node' of a transaction. It receives an outcome from its superior and decides the outcome of its immediate branches according to the cohesive rules defined in this specification. It has a lifetime, which is coincident with that of the cohesion. A sub-composer can issue instructions to prepare, cancel and confirm on individual branches. These instructions take the form of BTP messages. A sub-composer must also have at least one BTP Address to which lower nodes can send BTP messages.
Sub-coordinator	An actor, which is not the top 'node' of a transaction. It receives an outcome from its superior and propagates the outcome to its immediate branches according to the atom rules defined in this specification. It has a lifetime, which is coincident with that of this atom. A sub-coordinator can issue instructions to prepare, cancel and confirm. These instructions take the form of BTP messages. A sub-coordinator must also have at least one BTP Address to which lower nodes can send BTP messages.

Superior	<p>The BTP role that will accept enrolments of Inferiors and subsequently inform the Inferior of the Outcome applicable to it.</p> <p>A Superior will be one of Composer, Coordinator, Sub-composer, or Sub-coordinator.</p> <p>A Superior is considered to be a Superior even if it currently has no enrolled Inferiors.</p>
Superior-address	<p>The set of BTP-addresses used to communicate with an actor playing the role of a Superior.</p>
Superior-identifier	<p>A globally unambiguous identifier of a particular Superior within a particular transaction (represented as an URI or equivalent).</p>
Target-identifier	<p>An identifier carried in a BTP message that can be interpreted as transaction-identifier, a superior-identifier, or an inferior identifier according to the nature of the role in a BTP actor that receives this identifier.</p>
Terminator	<p>A BTP role performed by an Application element communicating with a Decider to control the completion of the Business Transaction. Frequently will be identical to the Initiator, but distinguished because the control of the Business Transaction can be passed between Application elements.</p>
Transaction	<p>A complete unit of work as defined by an application. A transaction starts when a part of the distributed transaction first initiates some work that is to be a part of a new transaction. The transaction tree may grow and shrink over time and (logical) space. A transaction completes when all the participants in a transaction have completed (that is have replied to their confirm or cancel instruction).</p>
Transaction tree	<p>A pattern of BTP nodes that provides the coordination of a distributed application transaction. There is single top node (a Decider) that interacts with the initiating application (which is a part of a distributed application). The Decider node has one, or more outcome relationships with other BTP nodes (sub-composer, sub-coordinator, or participant nodes). Any intermediate nodes (Sub-composer or Sub-coordinator nodes) have exactly one relationship up the tree in which they act as Inferior, and one, or more, relationships down the tree in which they act as Superior. Participants are leaves of the tree. That is they have exactly one relationship up the tree in which they act as Inferior and no down tree relationships.</p>

Transaction-identifier

A globally unambiguous identifier for a particular a Decider(represented as an URI or equivalent). A Decider is the top 'node' of the transaction and thus this identifier also unambiguously identifies the transaction. Often identical to the Superior-identifier of the Decider in its role as Superior, though the protocol does not require this.

Transmission

The passage of a message from a sender to a receiver.

5098